

Song Research Tools



[home](#) | [about](#) | [faq](#)

I. Guides to the State of the Field

The late Etienne Balazs began formulating plans for an international, collaborative study of the Sung period as early as 1949 and formally initiated the "Sung Project" in 1954. The Project was responsible for some of the most valuable reference tools in this guide. Its history is related in:

Ref (W) DS751.S86 1978x
(W) DS751.S86 1978x
Loc: Z3102 .S77

Yves Hervouet, "Introduction,"
A Sung Bibliography
Hong Kong: The Chinese University Press, 1978, pp. vii-xiv.

I.A. SOCIETIES, NEWSLETTERS, AND JOURNALS

Societies

Japan:

Sōdaishi kenkyūkai 宋代史研究会 (Society for Song Studies):
<http://home.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/songdai/songdaishi-yanjiuhui.htm>

This site contains announcements for and reports on the annual meetings of the society, links to related sites, a bibliography of Japanese scholarship on Song studies (1982-2002) and a directory of Japanese scholars working in the field.

Sōdaishi danwakai 宋代史談話會 (Society for the Study of Song History in Japan)
<http://www2u.biglobe.ne.jp/~songsong/songdai/danwakai.html>

Established in 1997 as a forum and reading group for young scholars of Song history active in Kyoto-Osaka-Kobe region. Includes meeting information, list of readings, and an announcement board.

Sōdai shibun kenkyūkai 宋代詩文研究會 (Society for the Study of Song Literature)
<http://www9.big.or.jp/~co-ume/song/>
<http://www9.big.or.jp/~co-ume/song/danwakai.htm>

Includes announcements and a mailing list. Registration is required to get access to the full site.

Sōshi kenkyūkai 宋詞研究會 (Society for the Study of Song ci)
<http://www.res.otaru-uc.ac.jp/~hagiwara/scyjh.html>

Includes annual meeting reports, a bibliography of Japanese research on ci, the table of contents of the association's periodical *Fūjo* 風絮 (2005-) and links to sites of interest.

Sōdai sekkoku no kai 宋代石刻の會 (Song Dynasty Inscriptions Society)
<http://home.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/moka/inscription.htm>

Based at Hiroshima University, this is a group meeting regularly to read and discuss Song epigraphical texts.

Taiwan:

Song shi zuotanhui 宋史座談會 (Symposium on Song History):

<http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/%7Etw sung/activity/c.htm>

These pages provide an overview of the meetings held by the group and are part of the larger online index of resources useful to Song scholars, titled *Taiwan Song shi yanjiu wang* 臺灣宋史研究網 (Song History Research Net in Taiwan), <http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~tw sung/> managed now by Yang Shihong 楊士弘 and previously by Liu Liyan (Lau Nap-Yin) 柳立言. This latter site provides access to bibliographies of Taiwanese M.A. and Ph.D. theses and research written by affiliates of Academia Sinica in Song studies, directories of individuals and institutions, an overview of major journals and sites in the US, PRC, Japan, Korea and Taiwan, and maintains a list of electronic resources both proprietary and non-proprietary. The latter list is not annotated.

Songdai shiliao yanduhui 宋代史料研讀會 (Song Texts Reading Group)

<http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~tw sung/song/index.htm>

This group meets regularly to discuss various types of Song historical materials. Meetings, topics, and materials are posted on the site.

USA:

The Society for Song, Yuan, and Conquest Dynasties Studies:

<http://www.humanities.uci.edu/eastasian/SungYuan/>

This site lists news and announcements, tables of contents of the journal produced by the society (see below) and it indexes links of interest to Song scholars. Those interested in subscribing to the society's listserv can find instructions on the main page. There are no archives for this listserv.

Korea:

宋遼金元史研究會

PRC:

Zhongguo Song shi yanjiuhui 中國宋史研究會 (The Chinese Society of Song History):

<http://www.songdai.com>

This site contains news and announcements on meetings and new publications, publishes secondary research and bookreviews, provides links to Song primary sources and other resources, and maintains online communication tools.

Zhongguo Songdai wenxuehui 中國宋代文學會 (The Chinese Society for Song Literature)

Organizes national and international meetings on Song literature.

Zhongguo Su Shi yanjiuhui 中國蘇軾研究會 (The Chinese Su Shi Society)

Organizes regular meetings on Su Shi.

Newsletters and Journals

For current bibliography in Western languages, Chinese, and Japanese, as well as for abstracts of Western-language dissertations, reports on work-in-progress and scholarly activities, and research articles, see:

W2665/95
(W) DS751.S83 (Latest)

Journal of Song Yuan Studies
21 (1989) -

LoC: DS751 .S83

Published as *Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies*
14 (1978) - 20 (1988).Published as *Sung Studies Newsletter*,
1 (1970) - 13 (1977).<http://www.humanities.uci.edu/eastasian/SungYuan/JSYS/content.htm>

For the state of the field in the People's Republic of China, including PRC bibliography, publication news, and short articles of scholarly interest, see:

2665/5635

Sung-shih yen-chiu t'ung-hsun

宋史研究通訊

(Bulletin of Sung studies), 1985-

For a list of bibliographical articles published in this journal, see [II.B](#).

In addition, the following periodicals are dedicated to Song studies:

C2665 6247

Songdai wenhua yanjiu

宋代文化研究

(Research on Song Culture).

Sichuan daxue Songdai wenhua yanjiu ziliao zhongxin 四川大学宋代文化研究
資料中心, ed.

Chengdu: Sichuan da xue chu ban she, 1990- (annual)

(C) PL2293 .X56x

Xin Song xue

新宋學

(New Song Studies)

Zhongguo Songdai wenxue xuehui 中國宋代文學學會

Shanghai: Shanghai cishu chubanshe, 2001- (annual)

9980 5687 K23

Fuyin baokan ziliao. K23, Song, Liao, Jin, Yuan shi

复印报刊资料宋辽金元史

(Reprinted Journal Articles: Song, Liao, Jin and Yuan History)

Beijing: Zhongguo renmin daxue shubao ziliao zhongxin, 1984- (monthly)

Other titles: *Fuyin baokan ziliao. K23, Zhongguo gudai shi (2). Song, Liao, Jin, Yuan, Ming, Qing* (1994-1995); *Song Liao Jin Yuan shi K23* (1996-) (quarterly)

C) DS751 .S824 1990x

Song shi yanjiu lun cong

宋史研究論叢

(Research Papers on Song History).

Baoding : Hebei daxue chubanshe, 1990-

The Taiwanese Song History Study Society publishes annually a volume reprinting important recent articles; occasionally the articles have been expanded or revised. This series appears under the title:

2665/3513

Song shi yanjiu ji

宋史研究集

(Collected Studies of Song History).

Song shi zuotan hui 宋史座談會

Vol. 1 (1958) -

Taipei: Guoli bianyiguan.

<http://epublish.hyweb.com.tw/NICT/home.jsp>

The tables of contents of the former journal can be searched when conducting a search on 宋史研究集 at the 國立編譯館 site listed above. Members can read articles online. Vol. 35 (2005) includes a cumulative table of contents of all 35 volumes (pp. 561-608). Vol. 11 contains an index to article titles for vols. 6-10 and an index to authors for vols. 1-10. Cumulative indexes for volumes 1-17 and 18-22 have been published as an appendix

respectively in *Song shi zuotanhui yibaici tekan* 宋史座談會一百次特刊 (Taibei: Song shi zuotanhui, 1988) and *Song shi zuotanhui chengli sanshi zhounian xueshu yantaohui wenji* 宋史座談會成立三十週年學術研討會 (Taibei: Song shi zuotanhui, 1994).

The Chinese Society of Song Studies regularly compiles the proceedings of its conferences. Proceedings of international conferences on Song history have also been published. See, for example

- (C) DS751 .I56 1988 *Guoji Song shi yantaohui lunwen ji*
國際宋史研討會論文集
(Collected articles from the International conference on Song history).
Guoji Song shi yantaohui mishuchu,
Taibei: Zhongguo wenhua daxue, 1988. 4, 900 p., [8] p. of plates
- Followed by: Di er jie Song shi xueshu yantaohui lunwen ji
第二屆宋史學術研討會論文集
(Collected Papers from The Second Academic Conference on Song History)
Di er jie Song shi xueshu yantaohui mishuchu
Taibei: Zhongguo wenhua daxue, 1996.
<http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~twsung/activity/01/subpage/01/sungs01.php>
- (C) DS751 .I57 1991 *Guoji Songdai wenhua yantaohui lunwen ji*
國際宋代文化研討會論文集
(Papers from the International Conference on Song Culture).
Sun Qinshan 孫欽善 et al., ed.
Chengdu: Sichuan daxue chubanshe, 1991. 2, 6, 4, 548 p.
- (C) DS751 .K86 1991x *Guoji Song shi yantaohui lunwen xuanji*
國際宋史研討會論文選集
(Selected Papers from the International Conference on Song History).
Deng Guangming 鄧廣銘 and Qi Xia 漆俠, eds.
Beijing: Hebei daxue chubanshe, 1992. 5, 570 p.
- (C) 2665 351 *Song shi yanjiu lunwen ji : Guoji song shi yantaohui ji Zhongguo Song shi yanjiuhui dijiujie nianhui biankan*
宋史研究論文集 : 国际宋史研讨会暨中国宋史研究会第九届年会编刊
(Collection of Papers on Song History: The International Conference on Song History and the Ninth Annual Chinese Society of Song History).
Qi Xia 漆俠, ed.
Baoding: Hebei daxue chubanshe, 2002. 3, 2, 623 p.

See also the conference volumes listed under [I.B.1](#).

Blogs

Tang Song shi yanjiu 唐宋史研究 (Research on Tang and Song History)
<http://blog.hexun.com/tangsong/default.aspx> (previously <http://tangsong.blogchina.com>)
Geng Yuanli 耿元骊

This blog includes articles on topics related to Tang through Song socio-economic, political and cultural history, bibliography, and electronic tools. It lists links to libraries and databases, and institutions specializing in Tang-Song history. Both the blog and the (very small) image database are fully searchable.

I.B. RETROSPECTIVE ASSESSMENTS OF THE FIELD

A useful if dated introduction to Sung sources and to modern studies in Chinese, Japanese, and Western languages is:

"Matériaux de recherches sur la période Song"

Yves Hervouet.

Bulletin de liason pour les études chinoises en Europe/ Newsletter for Chinese Studies in Europe 6.14 (1973): 16-31.

For a recent general review of scholarship in Song history, see:

(C) DS751 .H8548 2003x

"Song shi yanjiu de guoqu yu weilai"

宋史研究的過去與未來

The Past and the Future of Song Studies

Huang Kuanchong 黃寬重

Shishi, wenxian yu renwu--Song shi yanjiu lunwen ji (Taipei: Dongda tushu gongsi, 2003). pp. 221-247

For an appraisal of the state of the field on "the Tang-Song transition," see

J2451/5657

"Tō Sō henkaku shi no kinkyō kara"

「唐宋變革」史の近況から

(From the Current Situation of the History of 'the Tang-Song Transition').

Maruhashi Mitsuhiro 丸橋充拓

Chūgoku shigaku 10 (2001):149-169.

"Ershi shiji zhongri Tang Song biange guan yanjiu shuping"

20世紀中日"唐宋變革"觀研究述評

(A Critical Review of Chinese and Japanese Views of 'the Tang-Song Transition' in the Twentieth Century)

Li Huarui 李華瑞

Shixue lilun yanjiu 史學理論研究 2003.4: 87-95.

I.B.1. Scholarship in the People's Republic of China

For a masterful book-length analysis of the main debates and a survey of twentieth-century scholarship on the Song Dynasty:

Song shi yanjiu

宋史研究

(Research on Song History)

Zhu Ruixi 朱瑞熙, Cheng Yu 程郁

Fuzhou: Fujian renmin 2006.

This study includes chapters on the founders of the field of Song research in republican China in the early twentieth century, on major debates (including debates on such topics as the Song emperors, Yue Fei, Wang Anshi, and Fan Zhongyan), and on political structure, economic history, social history, and cultural history (including arts, science and technology, language, material culture, religion, bibliography and historiography).

For a comparative assessment of three periods in the development of Chinese Song historical studies between 1950 and 1990, see:

2451/0257

Loc: DS735 .H737 China

"Hai-hsia liang-an Sung-shih yen-chiu tung-hsiang"

海峽兩岸宋史研究動向

Huang K'uan-ch'ung 黃寬重

Hsin shih-hsueh 新史學 3.1 (1992): 131-160.

"Trends in Historical Research in Taiwan and Mainland China."
Huang K'uan-ch'ung. Trans. David C. Wright.
Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies 25(1995): 266-302.

For a recent assessment of trends in Song historical research, see

2665/5635 "Jinnian lai Song shi yanjiu de xin jinzhan"
近年来宋史研究的新进展
(New Developments in Recent Research on Song History)
Deng Xiaonan 邓小南
Song shi yanjiu tongxun 44 (2004.2): 16-24.

For a useful introduction to PRC historical scholarship in 1980-1990 by a leading Chinese social historian, see:

J2451/5657 "Chung-kuo ta-lu chin-shih-nien lai te Sung-shih yen-chiu"
中國大陸近十年來的宋史研究
(Sung historical studies in the mainland during the past decade).
Chang Pang-wei 張邦煒
Chūgoku shigaku 中國史學 / *Studies in Chinese History* 1 (1991):
103-124.

and, for approximately the same period,

(W) DS751.S83 "A Brief Survey of Song Studies in Chinese over the Past 10
LoC: DS751 .S83 Years."
Yang Weisheng. Trans. Lee-fang Ch'ien.
Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies 20 (1988): 1-17.

For a more general review of PRC scholarship in Song history, see

2665/5635 "Song shi yanjiu de huigu yu zhanwang"
宋史研究的回顾与展望
(Reflections on and Prospects in Song Historical Research).
Wang Zengyu 王曾瑜
Song shi yanjiu tongxun 30 (1997.2): 1-14.

Regular updates on scholarship on Song cultural history in the PRC and elsewhere have appeared in the annual periodical:

C2665 6247 *Songdai wenhua yanjiu*
宋代文化研究
(Research on Song Culture).
Sichuan daxue Songdai wenhua yanjiu ziliao zhongxin 四川大学宋代文化研究 資料中心, ed.
Chengdu: Sichuan da xue chu ban she, 1990-
7:263-271 (1998) Guo Qi 郭齊
6:306-314 (1996) Guo Qi 郭齊

For the annual bibliographies published in the same journal, see [II.B](#).

There are annual reviews of the scholarship published in the following disciplines:

R1010.1/5638
Ref (C) B31 .C4 Latest
LoC: B31 .C4 China

Chung-kuo che-hsueh nien-chien
中國哲學年鑑
(Annual review of Chinese philosophy).
Shanghai: Chung-kuo ta pai-k'o ch'üan-shu ch'u-pan she.

R2451/5676
LoC: DS701 .S44

Chung-kuo li-shih-hsueh nien-chien
中國歷史學年鑑
(Annual review of the study of Chinese history).
Peking: Jen-min ch'u-pan she.

Zhongguo wenxue nianjian
中國文學年鑒
(Annual Review of Chinese Literature)
中国社会科学院文学研究所《中国文学研究年鉴》编委会,
1981-
<http://www.literature.org.cn/magz.asp?ID=190303>

Since 1986 an annual review of historical studies has appeared. The sections on Sung history and their authors are noted here.

2451/5651.1
(C) DS734.7.C63
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu tung-t'ai
中國史研究動態
(Trends in Chinese historical studies).
2005.12: 2-10 Qu Mingli 曲鸣丽
2004.6: 2-10 Li Li 李立
2003.12: 2-11 Qu Mingli 曲鸣丽
2002.11: 2-12 Qu Mingli 曲鸣丽, Shen Dongmei 沈冬梅
2001.9: 2-11 Qu Mingli 曲鸣丽
2000.12: 11-19 Qu Mingli 曲鸣丽
1999.12: 2-8 Zhang Tong 张彤
1998.12: 5-12 Zhang Tong 张彤
1997.12: 10-17 Zhang Tong 张彤
1996.12: 18-26 Zhang Tong 张彤
1995.12: 7-14 Zhang Tong 张彤
1995.1: 11-17 Zhang Tong 张彤
1993.7: 6-12 Hsing T'ieh 邢鐵
1992.12: 1-7 Chang T'ung 張彤
1991.8: 1-7 Chang T'ung 張彤
1990.5: 1-7 Wang Sheng-to 王聖鐸
1989.5: 1-6 Wang Sheng-to 王聖鐸
1988.10: 1-6 Chang Hsiu-p'ing 張秀平
1987.7: 1-8 Chang Hsiu-p'ing 張秀平
1986.10: 12-18 Chang Hsiu-p'ing 張秀平
For recent issues, see http://ich.cass.cn/Article_Show.asp?ArticleID=347

In addition to its annual bibliography (II.B), the newsletter of The Chinese Society of Song History also occasionally publishes a review of the scholarship of the past year:

- 2665/5635 "2001 nian Dalu Song shi yanjiu gaikuang"
2001年大陆宋史研究概况
(A General Overview of Research on Song History in Mainland
China in 2001)
Jin Qiang 金强, Wei Zusong 韦祖松
Song shi yanjiu tongxun 39 (2002.1): 9-23.

Since 1982 the national meeting of the Sung Studies Association in the PRC has published a conference volume with the title:

- 2665/351
LoC: DS751 .S82 China
Song shi yanjiu lunwen ji
宋史研究論文集
(Collected research articles on Song history)
Volume 1 (1980 meeting) Shanghai: Shanghai gujii, 1982.
Volume 2 (1982 meeting) Zhengzhou: Henan renmin chubanshe,
1984.
Volume 3 (1984 meeting) Hangzhou: Zhejiang renmin chubanshe.
Volume 4 (1987 meeting) Shijiazhuang: Hebei jiaoyu chubanshe,
1989.
Volume 5 (1992 meeting) Kaifeng: Henan daxue chubanshe, 1993.
Volume 6 (1994 meeting) Baoding: Hebei daxue chubanshe, 1996.
Volume 7 (1996 meeting) Beijing: Yunnan minzu chubanshe, 1997.
Volume 8 (1998 meeting) Yinchuan: Ningxia renmin chubanshe,
1999.
Volume 9 (2000 meeting) Baoding: Hebei daxue chubanshe, 2002.
Volume 10 (2002 meeting) Lanzhou: Lanzhou daxue chubanshe,
2004.
Volume 11 (2004 meeting) Chengdu: Ba Shu shushe, 2006.

See also the conference volumes listed under [I.A.](#)

I.B.2. Scholarship in the Republic of China and Hong Kong

The most recent and comprehensive review of scholarship after 1945 in Taiwan is:

- Zhanhou Taiwan de lishixue yanjiu 1945-2000; di si ce: Song Liao Jin Yuan shi (Song shi zhi bu)*
《戰後臺灣的歷史學研究1945-2000》第四冊 宋遼金元史(宋史之部)
[Post-War Historical Research in Taiwan 1945-2000; Volume 4: Song,
Liao, Jin and Yuan History (Song History)]
Han Guihua 韓桂華
Taibei: Xingzhengyuan guojia kexue weiyuanhui 行政院國家科學委員
會, 2004.

For a review of post-1949 scholarship in Taiwan and Hong Kong, see:

- Ref (C)DS735.C543 1990x v.3
Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu chih-nan 3: Sung-shih Liao Chin Yuan shih
中國史研究指南, 3: 宋史遼金元史
(Guide to the study of Chinese history 3: Sung history and Liao,
Chin, and Yuan history).
Kao Ming-shih 高明士 ed.
Taipei: Lien-ching ch'u-pan-she, 1990. 302p.
Liang Keng-yao 梁庚堯 on political, social, and economic history

in Taiwan, pp. 3-48.
 Wu Chan-liang 吳展良 on intellectual and literary history in
 Taiwan, pp. 49-104.
 Li Hung-ch'i 李弘祺 on Sung history in Hong Kong, pp. 105-112.

Also note the following comparative assessment of three periods of mainland and Taiwan historical studies, 1949-1990:

2451/0257
 Loc: DS735 .H737 China
 "Hai-hsia liang-an Sung-shih yen-chiu tung-hsiang"
 海峽兩岸宋史研究動向
 Huang K'uan-ch'ung 黃寬重
Hsin shih-hsueh 新史學 3.1 (1992): 131-160.
 "Trends in Historical Research in Taiwan and Mainland China."
 Huang K'uan-ch'ung. Trans. David C. Wright.
Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies 25 (1995): 265-302.

Although a periodic review devoted to Sung studies has yet to be established for scholarship in Taiwan and Hong Kong, bibliographies of recent work regularly appear in the *Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies*. State-of-the-field news and bibliographies, covering Sung studies and other fields, will also be found in

9160/3713
 (C) DS734.97.T28 H35
 for the latest
 LoC: DS734.97.T28 H35
Han-hsueh yen-chiu t'ung-hsun
 漢學研究通訊
 (Bulletin of sinological studies).
 Vol. 1.1 - (1982-).
 Taipei: Han-hsueh yen-chiu tzu-liao chi fu-wu chung-hsin.
<http://ccs.ncl.edu.tw/paper.html>
 3:2 (1984.4) 82-86; 3:3 (1984.7) 141-146 (discussing 1979-1983)
 9:1 (1990.3) 1-4; 9:2 (1990.6) 69-75 (discussing 1984-1988)

See also *Song shi yanjiu ji* under [IA](#).

I.B.3. Scholarship in Japan and Korea

Japan

For a review of major achievements and topics in Japanese Sung studies in the postwar period, see:

(W) DS12.A45
 LoC: DS12 .A45
 "Trends in Postwar Japanese Studies on Sung History: A
 Bibliographic Introduction"
 Hasegawa Yoshio.
Acta Asiatica 50 (1986): 95-120.

Of particular interest for its account of the history of Japanese Sung studies and the emergence of intellectual divisions among Japanese historians with regard to the Naitō hypothesis and the study of economic and social history, is:

J2451/5657
 "Nihon ni okeru Sōdaishi kenkyū no kichō"
 日本における宋代史研究の基調
 (The nature of Song historical studies in Japan).
 Teraji Jun 寺地遵
Chūgoku shigaku 中國史學 *Studies in Chinese History* 1
 (1991):191-210.

(See below for Chinese translation.)

An earlier version of this article includes a useful bibliography:

J2401/0247 "Nihon ni keru Sōdaishi kenkyū"
日本における宋代史研究 (1915-1989)
(Sung historical studies in Japan)
Teraji Jun 寺地遵
Hiroshima daigaku Tōyōshi kenkyūshitsu hōkoku 廣島大學東洋史研究室報告 11 (1989): 24-42.

Note also the entries under I.C. below.

For a more general survey of the state of Japanese studies on the Five Dynasties, Sung, and Yuan, see:

2665/5635 "Jih-pen te Wu-tai, Sung, Yuan shih yen-chiu chin-k'uang"
日本的五代宋元史研究近況
(The current state of Japanese studies of the Five Dynasties, Sung, and Yuan).
Kondō Kazunari 近藤一成 Trans. Wang Jui-lai 王瑞來
Sung-shih yen-chiu t'ung-hsun 4 (1985): 17-22.

Reviews and updates on scholarship on Song cultural history in Japan and Korea appear in the annual periodical:

C2665 6247 *Songdai wenhua yanjiu*
宋代文化研究
(Research on Song Culture).
Sichuan daxue Songdai wenhua yanjiu ziliao zhongxin 四川大学宋代文化研究 資料中心, ed.
Chengdu: Sichuan da xue chu ban she, 1990-

6 (1996):315-332 Teraji Jun 寺地遵 (see above) Wang Xiaobo 王曉波

Of great value is the annual review of the previous year's historical scholarship on Five Dynasties, Sung, and Yuan in Japan, usually appearing in Number 5 of each volume of:

J2305/5700 *Shigaku zasshi*
LoC: D1 .S4338 Japan 史學雜誌
(Journal of historical studies).
<http://wwwsoc.nii.ac.jp/hsj/>

These reviews on Japanese scholarship on Song history are translated in Chinese annually in

2451/5651.1
(C) DS734.7.C63
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China *Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai*
中國史研究動態
(Trends in Chinese historical studies).

2005.10: 22-27
2004.11: 22-27

2003.10: 18-26
 2002.9: 21-28
 2001.10: 22-29
 1999.2: 16- 25

For a cumulative bibliography of articles indexed in this journal between 1982 and 2002, see *Nihon Sōdaishi kenkyū bunken mokuroku (1982-2002) (II.C)*

The *Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies* has published translations of these retrospects, beginning with the 1987 survey.

<p>W2665/95 LoC: DS751 .S83</p>	<p>2004: Hirata Shigeki et al. <i>Journal of Song-Yuan Studies</i> 35 (2005): 129-166. 2003: Hirata Shigeki et al. <i>Journal of Song-Yuan Studies</i> 34 (2004): 109-158. 2002: Hirata Shigeki et al. <i>Journal of Song-Yuan Studies</i> 33 (2003): 225-250. 2001: Hirata Shigeki et al. <i>Journal of Song-Yuan Studies</i> 32 (2002): 127-145. 1982-2000: Ihara Hiroshi 井原弘, Hirata Shigeki 平田茂樹, et al. <i>Journal of Song-Yuan Studies</i> 31 (2001): 157-313. 1990: Kumamoto Takashi 熊本崇 Trans. Rob Foster. <i>Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies</i> 25 (1995): 241-263. 1989: Ōshima Ritsuko 大島立子 Trans. Paulo Frank. <i>Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies</i> 23 (1993): 173-200. 1988: Honda Osamu 本田治 Trans. Kenneth Chase. <i>Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies</i> 22 (1990-1992): 165-186. 1987: Kida Tomoo 木田知生 Trans. Anthony DeBlasi. <i>Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies</i> 21 (1989): 188-215.</p>
--	--

John Wixted's monograph on Japanese scholars of China is also of use in locating Japanese scholarship on Song society:

<p>(W) Ref DS734.8 .W58 1992</p>	<p><i>Japanese Scholars of China : a Bibliographical Handbook</i> = [Nihon no Chugokugaku senmonka handobukku] John Timothy Wixted. Lewiston: Edwin Mellen Press, 1992.</p>
----------------------------------	---

For additional reviews of Japanese scholarship see I.B.5, Scholarship in Particular Fields.

Korea

<p>2451/5651.1 (C) DS734.7.C63 LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China</p>	<p>Hanguo Song Liao Jin Xia shi yanjiu gaikuang 韩国宋辽金西夏史研究概况 General Survey of Korean Research on Song, Liao, Jin and Xi Xia History Yi Sōkhyōn 李锡炫 <i>Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai</i> 1999.4:20-27.</p>
--	--

Also appeared in *Song shi yanjiu tongxun* 34 (1999.2): 9-16.

This article reviews Korean studies on Song history from the 1950s onwards.

The following article briefly reviews Korean scholarship on Song Dynasty political, economic, social, and cultural history:

Korean Studies on the Song, Liao, Jin, and Yuan Periods (2000-2003)
Jung-im Yuk
Journal of Song-Yuan Studies 35 (2005): 167-175.

I.B.4. Scholarship in the West

On new developments in the American study of Sung history between 1983 and 1993, see:

2451/0257 LoC: DS735 .H737 China	"Mei-kuo Sung-tai yen-chiu chin-k'uang" 美國宋代研究近況 Peter K. Bol 包弼德 <i>Hsin shih-hsueh</i> 新史學 6 (1995): 185-205.
-------------------------------------	--

For a review of trends in American scholarship between 1990 and 2006, see:

Recent Trends in American Research in Song Dynasty History:
Local Religion and Political Culture
Hilde De Weerd
Ōsaka shiritsu daigaku tōyōshi ronsō 大阪市立大学東洋史論叢,
forthcoming, 2006.

On scholarship in the USSR, see:

DS 734.97.S65 S68 LoC: DS734.97.S65 S68 1984	"The Sung, Chin, and Hsi-hsia." Ruth Dunnell. In <i>Soviet Studies of Pre-Modern China</i> , Gilbert Rozman ed. Ann Arbor: Center for Chinese Studies, University of Michigan, 1984, pp. 69-79.
---	--

Reviews and updates on scholarship on Song cultural history in the former Soviet Union, Europe and the US appear in the annual periodical:

C2665 6247	<i>Songdai wenhua yanjiu</i> 宋代文化研究 (Research on Song Culture). Sichuan daxue Songdai wenhua yanjiu ziliao zhongxin 四川大学宋代文化研究 資料中心, ed. Chengdu: Sichuan da xue chu ban she, 1990-
------------	---

See, for example, vols. 2, 3 and 4. The articles on scholarship in Europe and the US are translations of articles appearing in *Sung Studies Newsletter/Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies/Journal of Song-Yuan Studies*. (see above)

For a brief overview of American scholarship from the perspective of an influential Chinese Song scholar, see

2451/0257
LoC: DS735 .H737 China "Jin ershi nian lai de Meiguo Song shi yanjiu"
近二十年来的美国宋史研究
(Research on Song History in the US during the Last Twenty Years)
Bao Weimin 包伟民
Song shi yanjiu tongxun 36 (2000): 17-19.

I.B.5. Scholarship in Particular Fields

I.B.5.a. Intellectual and Religious History

Intellectual History

A general review by a senior intellectual historian is

J 2414 1317
LoC: DS32.5 .A44 1983 Japan "Shisōshi III -- Sō-Shin"
思想史 III 一宋~清
(Intellectual history III: Sung through Ch'ing).
Shimada Kenji 島田虔次
Ajia rekishi kenkyū nyūmon: Chūgoku
アジア歴史研究入門: 中國
(Introduction to the study of Asian history: China).
Kyoto: Dōhōsha, 1983, pp. 249-286.

On Wang Anshi's New Learning, see:

2451/5651.1
(C) DS734.7.C63
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China "Jinnian lai Wang Anshi Xinxue yanjiu zongshu"
近年来王安石新学研究综述
(New Perspectives in Japanese Research on Song Learning).
Zhu Xiuchun 朱修春
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 2000.2:2-6.

This review article is divided up into sections on the formation of New Learning, its content, special features, influence and historical significance.

On Neo-Confucianism in particular see, for Japan:

2451/5651.1
(C) DS734.7.C63
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China "Ribei Song xue yanjiu de xin guandian"
日本宋学研究的新观点
(New Perspectives in Japanese Research on Song Learning).
Kojima Tsuyoshi 小島毅
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 36 (2000):37-40.

(W) DS12.A45
LoC: DS12 .A45 "Japanese Studies on Sung Neo-Confucianism during the Sung and Ming dynasties."
Ōshima Akira.
Acta Asiatica 52 (1987): 86-109.
<http://www.tohogakkai.com/acta.htm>

1010.1/5657 "Chan-hou Jih-pen Sung Ming li-hsueh yen-chiu te kai-k'uang"

- LoC: B8.C5 C48
 戰後日本宋明理學研究的概況
 (Overview of postwar Japanese studies of Sung and Ming Neo-Confucianism).
 Shimada Kenji 島田虔次
Chung-kuo che-hsueh 中國哲學 7(1982): 146-158.
- 9200/5372
 LoC: AS452.C4614 A15 China
 "Jih-pen li-hsueh yen-chiu ch'ing-k'uang kai-lueh"
 日本理學研究情況概略
 (The state of Japanese studies of Neo-Confucianism).
 Yoshida Kōhei 吉田公平 and Ichiki Tsuyuhiko 市來津由彦
Chung-chou hsueh-k'an 中州學刊1985.3 : 54-60.
- J2305/7571
 LoC: D1 .R2178 Japan
 "Shushigaku kenkyū no genjō to kadai"
 朱子學研究の現状と課題
 (Studies on Chu Hsi Confucianism: Its present state and issues).
 Gotō Nobuko 後藤延子
Rekishigaku kenkyū 歷史學研究 421 (1975): 28-34.

for Western studies of Neo-Confucianism:

- J1237/2174
 LoC: B128.C54 S54 Japan
 "Ō-Bei no Shushigaku"
 歐米の朱子學
 (Chu Hsi studies in Europe and America).
 Ch'en Jung-chieh 陳榮捷 (Wing-tsit Chan).
 In *Shushigaku nyūmon*
 朱子學入門
 (Introduction to Chu Hsi Confucianism).
Shushigaku taikai 朱子學大系 Vol. I.
 Tokyo: Meitoku shuppansha, 1974, pp. 491-529.

For one view of several recent studies of Sung intellectual history with a particular emphasis on Neo-Confucianism, see:

- 9205/5605.1
 LoC: PL2250 .C5638 China
Pa-shih nien-tai chung-yeh i-lai Mei-kuo te Sung-tai ssu-hsiang-shih yen-chiu
 八十年代中葉以來美國的宋代思想史研究
 (American scholarship on Sung intellectual history since the mid-1980s).
 Hoyt Cleveland Tillman 田浩
Chung-kuo wen-che yen-chiu t'ung-hsun 中國文哲研究通訊 3:4
 (1993): 63-70.

for China:

- J1009.1/6264
 "Chūgoku ni okeru Sō Min rigakushi kenkyū"
 中國における宋明理學史研究
 (Studies of Sung-Ming Neo-Confucianism in China).
 Tsuchida Kenjiro 土田健次郎
Tōyō no shisō to shūkyō 東洋の思想と宗教4 (1987): 100-119.

For Chinese scholarship on **Chu Hsi**, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Chu-tzu-hsueh yen-chiu te hsin-chin-chan"
朱子學研究的新進展
(New developments in Chu Hsi studies).
Yü Chao-p'eng 俞兆鵬 and Li Wei-tung 李衛東
Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu tung-t'ai 中國史研究動態1991.3:26-30.

On the changes in the evaluation of Chu Hsi in the PRC, see:

"Saikin no Chūgoku ni okeru Shu Ki kenkyū o megutte"
最近の中國における朱熹研究おめぐって
(On recent Chu Hsi studies in China).
Kawano Masahiro 川野正裕
Kumatsu shū 沫集 (1989): 91-99.

For a review of recent scholarship on Eastern Zhe intellectuals, see

2451/5651.1
(C) DS734.7.C63
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Bashi niandai yilai Nan Song Zhedong shigong xuepai yanjiu gaishu"
八十年代以來南宋浙東事功學派研究概述
(Review of Research on the Zhedong Utilitarian School of Thought Since the Eighties).
Chen Guocan 陈国灿
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 1996.3:2-10.

"Ershi shiji guanyu Zhedong shixue yanjiu de jige wenti"
20世紀關於“浙東史學”研究的幾個問題
(Some Questions regarding Research on Zhedong Historiography in the Twentieth Century)
Cai Kejiao 蔡克驕
<http://www.guoxue.com/zt/lzqydzdwh/luzuqian.htm>

For Taiwan scholarship on **Ssu-ma Kuang's *Tzu-chih t'ung-chien***, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Chin ssu-shih-nien lai T'ai-wan Tzu-chih t'ung-chien yen-chiu kai-shu"
近四十年來臺灣資治通鑑研究概述
(Introduction to Taiwan scholarship on *Tzu-chih t'ung-chien* in the last forty years).
Chai Ch'ing-fu 翟清福
Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu tung-t'ai 中國史研究動態1993.11: 16-21.

For a review of research on Song historical scholarship, see

2665/5635

"Ershi shiji Songdai shixue zhi yanjiu"
 二十世紀宋代史學之研究
 (Research on Song Historical Scholarship in the Twentieth Century).
 Wang Deyi 王德毅
Song shi yanjiu tongxun 31 (1998.1): 5-16.

On Song classical scholarship, see

2451/5651.1
 (C) DS734.7.C63
 LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Songdai yijing sichao yanjiu shuping"
 宋代疑經思潮研究述評
 (A Critical Review of Research on the Doubting the Classics
 Movement during the Song Dynasty).
 Yang Shiwen 楊世文
Songdai wenhua yanjiu 12 (2003):371-385.

Religious History

For a review of Japanese scholarship published between 1980 and 2005, see:

Japanese Studies on Taoism and Chinese popular religion in the
 Song period, 1980 to the present
 Matsumoto Koichi
Journal of Song-Yuan Studies 35 (2005): 130-137.

For a review of scholarship on **Buddhism and Taoism**, see:

J9210/2794

"Sō Gen jidai no Bukkyō to Dōkyō ni kansuru kenkyū kaiko"
 宋元時代の佛教と道教に關ける研究回顧
 (Review of studies on Sung- and Yuan-period Buddhism and
 Taoism).
 Araki Kengo 黃木見悟
Kurume daigaku Hikakubunka kenkyūjo kiyō
 久留米大學比較文化研究所紀要 1 (1987): 87-129.

"Ershi shiji Songdai fojiao shiji yanjiu zongshu"
 二十世紀宋代佛教史籍研究綜述
 (Review of Twentieth-Century Studies on Song Buddhist Historical
 Writing)
 Cao Ganghua 曹剛華, Chen Xiao 陳曉
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 中國史研究動態 2006.2: 17-21.

On shrines, see:

2451/0257
 LoC: DS735 .H737 China

"Song zhi Qingdai de guojia yu cishen xinyang yanjiu de huigu yu taolun"
 宋至清代的國家與祠神信仰研究的回顧與討論
 (Review of studies on Sung- and Yuan-period Buddhism and

Taoism).
 Jiang Zhushan 蔣竹山
Xin shixue 8.2 (1997):187-219.
<http://saturn.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~huangkc/nhist/>

See also [I.B4](#).

I.B.5.b. Literature and Art

Literature

For regular in-depth reviews of scholarship on Song literary genres and authors, see

(C) | PL2293 .S653x *Songdai wenxue yanjiu nianjian*
 宋代文学研究年鑒
 (Periodical Review of Research on Song Dynasty Literature)
 Wuhan : Wuhan chubanshe, 2001-
 Published so far: volumes for 1997/99, 2000/01, 2002/03

Tang Song wenxue yanjiu zongshu
 唐宋文学研究综述
 (Review of Research on Tang and Song Dynasty Literature)
 In *Zhongguo wenxue nianjian* 中國文學年鑒, Zhongguo shehui kexueyuan
 wenxue yanjiusuo Zhongguo wenxue yanjiu nianjian bianweihui 中国社会
 科学院文学研究所《中国文学研究年鑒》编委会, 1981-
<http://www.literature.org.cn/magz.asp?ID=190303>

Gives annual reviews of Song literature. Divided by dynastic period and subdivided into general research and studies on individual authors.

For a general overview of changing concepts and methods in the field of Song literature, see:

Ershi shiji Songdai wenxue yanjiu guannian he fangfa zhi bianqian
 二十世纪宋代文学研究观念和方法之变迁
 (Changes in Concepts and Methods in Research on Song Dynasty
 Literature during the Twentieth Century)
 Zhang Yi 张毅
Wenxue yichan 文學遺產 2001.4: 111-120.

Wushinian lai Tang Song wenxue yanjiu de huigu yu qianzhan
 五十年來唐宋文學研究的回顧與前瞻
 (Review of and Prospects for Research on Song Dynasty Literature Based
 on the Last Fifty Years)
 Zhang Gaoping 張高評
Hanxue yanjiu tongxun 漢學研究通訊 77 (2001.2): 6-19.

For critical evaluations of Chinese scholarship on Song poetry, see:

Ershi shiji dalu de Song shi zonglun yanjiu huigu
 20世紀大陸的宋詩總論研究回顧
 (A Review of Surveys of Song Poetry in China during the Twentieth
 Century)
 Chen Youbing 陳友冰
Hanxue yanjiu tongxun 漢學研究通訊 24.2 (2005): 1-16.

10 nian lai Zhongguo Song shi yanjiu shuping

10年来中国宋诗研究述评

(Review of Research on Song Poetry in China during the Past Ten Years)

Qin Huanming 秦寰明, Cheng Jie 程杰 and Yōko Ōnishi 大西陽子

Nanjing: Jiangsu jiaoyu chubanshe, 1994 [not seen]

W2665/95
LoC: DS751 .S83

"Trends in Research on Song Poetry in China during the Last Decade"

Ōnishi Yōko 大西陽子 Translated by . Stuart Sargent.

Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies 23 (1993): 139-164.(An abbreviated translation of an article in *Ganran* 橄欖 4 [1991]: 196-215.)

Note also:

Huigu, pingjia yu zhanwang--Guanyu ben shiji Song shi yanjiu de tanhua
回顧、評價與展望—關於本世紀宋詩研究的談話

(A Review, Evaluation, and Prospects--A Conversation about Research on Song Poetry in this Century)

Mo Lifeng 莫砥鋒, Tao Wenpeng 陶文鵬, Cheng Jie 程杰

Wenxue yichan 文學遺產 1998.5: 1-14.<http://www.pkucn.com/viewthread.php?tid=21697&extra=page%3D6%26filter%3Ddigest>

Ershi shiji de Tang Song shi zhi zheng ji Song shi tezheng yanjiu

20 世纪的唐宋诗之争及宋诗特征研究

(The Debate about Tang and Song Poetry in the Twentieth Century and Research on the Characteristics of Song Poetry)

Zhang Yi 张毅

Huaiyin Shifan Xueyuan xuebao--zhexue shehui kexue ban 淮阴师范学院学报哲学社会科学版 24 (2002.2): 210-218.

Interprets the history of research on Song poetry from the perspective of the competition with Tang poetry research.

9401/5621
Z3103 .S59 (Orien China)

"Ts'ung Sung-shih yen-chiu lun-chu lei-mu Sung-shih lun-wen

hsuan-chi k'an Sung-shih yen-chiu te fang-fa ho ch'ü-hsiang"從宋詩研究論著類目、宋詩論文選輯看宋時研究的方法和趨向
(Methods and trends in Sung poetry studies evident in the *Sung shih yen-chiu lun-chu lei-mu* and *Sung shih lun-wen hsuan-chi*).

Chang Kao-p'ing 張高評

Shu-mu chi-k'an 書目季刊 (1989): 23-31.

For reviews of recent scholarship on Song prose, see:

Song wen yanjiu de shiji huigu yu zhanwang

宋文研究的世紀回顧與展望

(A Review of a Century of Research on Song Prose and Future Prospects)

Zhang Haiou 張海鷗

<http://courses.gxnu.edu.cn/chinese/gdwx/swhg.html>

1998-2001

This article reviews twentieth-century scholarship on Song prose. It is divided up into sections on editions and anthologies of Song texts, scholarship up to 1980, and scholarship produced in the last twenty years. Includes a short bibliography of similar earlier or partial review articles. For a similar review hailing the resurgence of scholarship on Song prose, see:

Song wen yanjiu zongshu 1997—1999
 1997—1999宋文研究綜述
 (A Review of Research on Song Prose 1997-1999)
 Fang Xiaoyi 方笑一, Li Qiang 李強, Dai Congxi 戴從喜
<http://www.guoxue.com/discord/swyj/swyj.htm>

On parallel prose since the Republican period, see:

Song siliu yanjiu zongshu
 宋四六研究綜述
 (A Review of Research on Song Parallel Prose)
 Shi Yichao 施懿超
Wenxue yichan 文學遺產 2004.2: 151-154.
<http://courses.gxnu.edu.cn/chinese/gdwx/sslyj.html>
<http://www.guoxue.com/magazine/wenxueyichan/wenxueyichan.htm>

For a discussion of changing approaches to the colloquial story in Song social history, see:

New Developments in the Study of Chinese Fiction—Theoretical Issues
 and a Discussion of the Application of the Colloquial Story to the Study of
 Social History
 Katsuyama Minoru
Journal of Song-Yuan Studies 35 (2005): 138-150.

Art

For a review of recent work, see:

W2665/95 "Updates on Song history studies in Japan: A Historiography of Japanese
 (W) DS751.S83 (Latest) Scholarship on Song Painting, 1980 to the Present"
 LoC: DS751 .S83 Itakura Masa' aki
JSYS 34 (2004): 121-138.

W2665/95 "Art Bibliography and News of the Field from 1983-1988."
 LoC: DS751 .S83 Julia K. Murray
Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies 20 (1988): 127-136.

"Songdai yishu yanjiu"
 宋代藝術研究
 (Research on Song Dynasty Art)
 Cheng Yu 程郁
 In Zhu Ruixi and Cheng Yu, *Song shi yanjiu* 宋史研究 (Fuzhou: Fujian
 renmin, 2006), pp. 318-330.

This book chapter is divided up into sections on painting, crafts, and music. It also discusses reference sources and series of reproductions.

I.B.5.c. Social and Economic History

For a review of recent work in **social-economic history**, including a lengthy bibliography, see:

RW9220/26.1
LoC: Z3001 .B49

"Rural China in the Song."
Peter J. Golas.
Journal of Asian Studies 39.2 (1980), 291-325.

For Chinese scholarship published in the 1980s and 1990s, see

J2451/5657

"Huigu 1980nian yilai Songdai de jiceng shehui yanjiu--Zhongwen lunzhu de taolun"
回顧1980年以來宋代的基層社會研究--中文論著的討論
(A Review of Scholarship on Song Local Society since 1980--A Discussion of Chinese Scholarship).
Wu Ya-ting
Chūgoku shigaku 12 (2002): 65-93.

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Jin shiyu nian Songdai xiangcun shehui shenghuo yanjiu gaishu"
近十余年宋代乡村社会生活研究概述
(General Overview of Research on Song Dynasty Village Life in the Last Decade).
Wang Xiaohong 王小红
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 2001.1:8-15.

The last article reviews scholarship on the rural economy, household types, class relations, administrative organization, family life, religion and customs.

Social History

For Japanese studies of Chinese social history from the Sung through the Ch'ing periods, see:

Japanese Studies in Chinese History (Song, Yuan, Ming, and Qing) 1973-1983.
Okuzaki Hiroshi. Trans. Joseph McDermott.
Tokyo: Centre for East Asian Cultural Studies. 1986.
Part II.12 in the series *Asian Studies in Japan, 1973-1983*. 20 p.

For recent Chinese scholarship, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Jin ershi nian lai Songdai shehui shenghuo shi yanjiu zongshu"
近20年来宋代社会生活史研究综述
(General Review of Research on the History of Song Dynasty Social Life during the Last Twenty Years).
Wang Shanjun 王善军
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 2001.2:9-14.

This article reviews general surveys of Song social life as well surveys of city life and life in rural areas. The second part of the article is devoted to a discussion of research on particular aspects of Song social life including food and material culture, ritual practices, recreational activities, and religious life.

For Chinese scholarship on women during the Song Dynasty, see

2665/5635

"Zhongguo dalu bainian Songdai funu shi yanjiu huigu"
中国大陆百年宋代妇女史研究回顾
(A General Review of Mainland Chinese Research from the Last Century in Song Dynasty Women's History).

Xu Man 许曼
Song shi yanjiu tongxun 38 (2001.2): 16-24.

The following introduces recent Chinese scholarship on **marriage** in the Sung

2451/5651.1
 LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China
 "Chin-nien lai Sung-tai hun-yin wen-t'i yen-chiu tsung-shu"
 近年來宋代婚姻問題研究綜述
 (General discussion of recent scholarship on marriage in the Sung).
 Hsiao Huai-an 肖懷安
Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu tung-t'ai 中國史研究動態 1994.1: 14-17.

The following article evaluates the expanding field of research on clans, focusing on Chinese research published during the last twenty years.

80niandai yilai Songdai zongzu shi Zhongwen lunzhu yanjiu huigu
 八〇年代以來宋代宗族史中文論著研究回顧
 (A Review of Chinese Research Since the 1980s on the History of clans in Song Times)
 Guo Enxiu 郭恩秀
Xin shixue 新史學 16.1 (2005): 125-157.

For a review of Japanese scholarship on the clan in Song times, see

W2665/95
 (W) DS751.S83 (Latest)
 LoC: DS751 .S83
 "Updates on Song history studies in Japan: The Present State of Themes of Research in Japan into Song Dynasty Clans"
 Endo Takatoshi
JSYS 34 (2004): 109-120.

On the literati, see:

"Jin shiwunian lai Riben dui Songdai shidafu de yanjiu"
 近十五年来日本对宋代士大夫的研究
 (Japanese Research on Song Literati during the Last Fifteen Years)
 ManabeTakako 真锅多嘉子
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 中國史研究動態 2005.8: 24-28.

On Song **demography**, see:

2451/5651.1
 LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China
 "Songdai huji zhidu he renkoushu wenti yanjiu gaishu"
 宋代戶籍制度和人口數問題研究綜述
 (General Review of Research on Questions Relating to the Song Dynasty Household Registration System and the Population Number).
 Zhao Yaodan 赵瑶丹
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 2001.1:15-18.

This is a review of the problems associated with Song population registers and debates on the total population of Song and Jin China.

For a review of Japanese scholarship on tenants and servants, see

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Ribei xueshujié guanyu cong Song zhi Qing tianhu, nubi, gugongren zai falü shang shenfen de taolun"
日本学术界关于从宋至清佃户奴婢雇工人在法律上身份的讨论
(Discussion in the Japanese Academic World about the Legal Status of Tenants, Female Servants and Hired Workers between the Song and the Qing Periods).
Tan Kyōji 丹乔二
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 1995.6:20-26.

For labor impositions on the general population, see:

9160/3713
(C) DS734.97.T28 H35
for the latest
LoC: DS734.97.T28 H35

"Dangdai Zhongguo xuezhe guanyu Songchao zhiyi zhidu yanjiu de huigu yu zhanwang"
當代中國學者關於宋朝職役制度研究的回顧與展望
Reflections on and Prospects in Contemporary Chinese Research on the Corvee System during the Song Dynasty
Diao Peijun 刁培俊
Hanxue yanjiu tongxun 22.3 (2003):15-26
<http://ccs.ncl.edu.tw/paper.html>

Also appeared in *Song shi yanjiu tongxun* 43 (2004.1): 14-25, under the title "Ershi shiji Songdai zhiyi zhidu yanjiu de huigu yu zhanwang" 二十世纪宋代职役制度研究的回顾与展望 (Reflections on and Prospects in Twentieth-Century Research on the Corvee System during the Song Dynasty)

For studies on **Sung cities**, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Chin-nien lai Sung-tai ch'eng-shih yen-chiu tsung-shu"
近年來宋代城市研究綜述
(General introduction to recent scholarship on Sung cities).
Hsu Kuo 許國
Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu tung-t'ai 中國史研究動態 1990.5:21-24.

Songdai chengshi yanjiu de xianzhuang yu keti--cong Songdai zhengzhi kongjian yanjiu de jiaodu guan cha
宋代城市研究的現狀與課題—從宋代政治空間研究的角度考察
(The State of the Field of Research on Song Cities: From the Perspective of Research on Political Space)
Hirata Shigeki 平田茂樹
In *Zhong-Ri gudai chengshi yanjiu* 中日古代城市研究, Nakamura Keiji 中村圭尔, Xin Deyong 辛德勇, ed.
Beijing: Zhongguo shehui kexue chubanshe, 2004, pp. 107-127.

"Tairiku Chūgoku ni okeru Sōdai toshishi kenkyū kaiko (1949~2003)"
大陸中國における宋代都市史研究回顧 (1949~2003)
(A Review of Research on Song Cities in Mainland China, 1949-2003)
Wu Songdi 吳松弟
Osaka shiritsu daigaku tōyōshi ronsō 大阪市立大學東洋史論叢 14 (2005): 19-50.

Economic History

For a broad overview of the interpretation of changes in economic policy between the Tang and Song periods, see

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Ershi shiji yilai Tang Song zhi ji jingji zhengce yanjiu zongshu"
20世纪以来唐宋之际经济政策研究综述
(A General Survey of Twentieth-Century Research on Economic Policy during the Tang-Song Transition).
Ge Jinfang 葛金芳
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 2004.2: 7-17.

Also: Ge Jinfang 葛金芳, and Zeng Yurong 曾育荣, 20世纪以来唐宋之际经济格局变迁研究综述 (*Hubei daxue xuebao* 湖北大學學報 6 (2003): 109-116).

For a review of recent Japanese work on Song economic history, see:

W2665/95
(W) DS751.S83 (Latest)
LoC: DS751 .S83

"Updates on Song History Studies in Japan: Economic History"
Aoki Atsushi
JSYS 32 (2002): 127-136.

For annual reviews of Song economic history, see

2665/5635

"Liao Song Xi Xia Jin Yuan jingji shi yanjiu zongshu"
辽宋西夏金元经济史研究综述
(A General Survey of Research in Liao, Song, Xi Xia, Jin, and Yuan Economic History).
Hua Lun 华伦
Song shi yanjiu tongxun 37 (2001.1):1-7 (covering research published in 1999-2000); 39 (2002.1): 1-8 (2001); 41 (2003.1): 1-10 (2002)

On commercial taxes, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Songdai shangshui wenti yanjiu zongshu"
宋代商税问题研究综述
(A General Surevy of Research Related to the Song Dynasty Commercial Tax Question).
Li Jingshou 李景寿
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 1999.9:10-14.

On state monopolies, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Jin shinian lai de guonei Tang Song zhuanmai shi yanjiu"
近十年来的国内唐宋专卖史研究
(Research on the History of State Monopolies during the Tang and Song Dynasties).
Huang Chunyan 黄纯燕
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 1997.7:11-19.

Focuses on the salt and tea monopolies.

For a broader approach to the tea monopoly, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Zhongguo chaye shi yanjiu de duandai toushi"
中国茶叶经济史研究的断代透视

(An Investigation of Research on the History of the Chinese Tea Economy by Period).
Sun Hongsheng 孙洪升
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 1998.2:11-16.

This article reviews research on the tea industry during Tang and Song times since 1949 in China and Taiwan. Includes sections on production, markets and trade, consumption and monopolies.

For an account of Japanese scholarship on the history of Chinese **water utilization**, see:

J8731/5612 "Nihon ni okeru Sō Gen suirishi kenkyū no seika to kadai"
LoC: Z7935 .J37 1994 日本における宋元水利史研究の成果と課題
(Achievements and issues in the Japanese study of the history of water utilization in Sung and Yuan).
Nagase Mamoru 長瀬守
Chūgoku suirishi kenkyū 中國水利史研究13 (1983): 16-28.

I.B.5.d. Political History and International Relations

Political History

Song Political Institutions and the Central Government

(C) JQ1510 .S664 2004x *Songdai zhidu shi yanjiu bainian, 1900-2000*
宋代制度史研究百年, 1900-2000
(One Hundred Years of Research on Song Dynasty Institutional History, 1900-2000)
Bao Weimin 包伟民, ed.
Beijing: Shangwu yinshuguan, 2004. 462 p.

This edited volume consists of essays reviewing international scholarship on Song institutional history during the last century. It includes essays reviewing scholarship on political history, legal, and military institutions, central and local government, clerks, official historiography, fiscal policy and population statistics, land tenure, the postal system.

For a review of Chinese scholarship on political history in general, see

J2451/5657 "1980 yilai Songdai zhengzhi shi Zhongwen lunzhu huigu"
一九八〇年以来宋代政治史中文論著回顧
(A Review of Chinese Scholarship on Song Political History since 1980).
Fang Zhenhua 方震華
Chūgoku shigaku 9 (1999):17-39.

For a review of American scholarship on political history between 1990 and 2006, see:

Recent Trends in American Research in Song Dynasty History: Local Religion and Political Culture
Hilde De Weerd
Ōsaka shiritsu daigaku tōyōshi ronsō 大阪市立大学東洋史論叢,
forthcoming, 2006.

For a discussion of policies in the **early Sung period**, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Chin-nien lai Sung-tai li-shih ti-wei ho Sung-ch'u cheng-ts'e yen-chiu shu-p'ing"
近年來宋代歷史地位和宋初政策研究述評
(Review of recent scholarship on the historical importance of the Sung and on early Sung policies).
Sung Ch'iang-kang 宋強剛
Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu tung-t'ai 中國史研究動態 1990.3: 148-22.

On central government institutions and politics, see:

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Songdai zhongshu quanli yanjiu shuping"
宋代中枢权力研究综述
(A General Review of Research on Song Dynasty Central Political Power).
Yang Shili 杨世利 and Shang Ping 尚平
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 1998.1:8-12.

This article reviews research on imperial power, ministerial power, power over the military administration, power over financial administration, power to issue decrees and impeach. The reviewers divide PRC historiography on these topics up into three periods: 1942-85, 1985-90, and the 1990s.

2451/5651.1
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Jin bainian lai Songdai zhongshu mishu zhidu yanjiu de huigu yu fansi"
近百年来宋代中枢秘书制度研究的回顾与反思
(A Review of and Reflections on Scholarship on Central Government Secretaries during the Song Dynasty in the Last One Hundred Years).
Chen Guang'en 陈广恩
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 2003.9:10-15.

For Japanese scholarship on Song fiscal policy, see:

J2401/0247

"Sōdai zaiseishi kenkyū no dōkō"
宋代財政史研究の動向
(Trends in studies of Sung financial history).
Oka Motoshi 岡元司
Hiroshima daigaku Tōyōshi kenkyūshitsu hokuhō 廣島大學東洋史研究室報告 10 (1988): 33-42

This article treats the fiscal situation of the whole empire and the fiscal institutions of the central government, river transportation and military provisioning, local finance, and the increasing integration of fiscal policy.

Ershi shiji Songdai falü zhidu shi yanjiu de huigu yu fansi
20世紀宋代法律制度史研究的回顧與反思
(A Review of and Reflections on Scholarship on Legal Institutions during the Song Dynasty in the Twentieth Century).
Dai Jianguo 戴建國
Shixue yuekan 史學月刊 2002.8: 13-22.

This article broadly reviews scholarship on Song legal history. It is identical to the author's chapter on legal history in *Songdai zhidu shi yanjiu bainian, 1900-2000* mentioned above.

Political Figures

On **Wang Anshi**, see:

C2665 6247 "Jinnian lai Wang Anshi yanjiu shuping"
近年来王安石研究述评
(A Critical Review of Recent Scholarship on Wang Anshi).
Zhang Hequn 张荷群
Songdai wenhua yanjiu 12 (2003):386-397.

For Wang Anshi's reforms, see:

Wang Anshi bianfa yanjiu shi
王安石变法研究史
(A History of Scholarship on Wang Anshi's Reforms).
Li Huarui 李华瑞
Beijing: Renmin, 2004. 603 p.

This is a very comprehensive study of Chinese reactions to the reforms, covering interpretations from the Southern Song period up to the late twentieth century. For the latter period, the author focuses on research trends in the People's Republic of China and Taiwan, but he includes a bibliography of publications through 2000 in Chinese, Japanese, and European languages. The coverage of the latter is incomplete.

For earlier Chinese scholarship on Wang Anshi's reform, see:

2451/5651.1 "Jin ershi nian lai Wang Anshi bianfa yanjiu shuping"
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China 近二十年来王安石变法研究述评
(A Critical Review of Research on Wang Anshi's Reforms in the Last
Twenty Years).
Ge Jinfang 葛金芳 and Jin Qiang 金强
Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 2000.10:11-20.

This article is divided up into sections on overall appraisals of the reforms, economic and financial reforms, military reforms, educational and examination reforms, and contemporaries' views of the reforms.

2451/5651.1 "Chin-nien lai Wang An-shih pien-fa wen-t'i t'ao-lun shu-p'ing"
LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China 近年來王安石變法問題討論述評
(Critical introduction to recent scholarship on Wang An-shih's New
Policies)
Huo Ch'un-ying 霍春英
Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu tung-t'ai 中國史研究動態 1989.6:12-15.

J2451/5657 "Ershi shiji Wang Anshi bianfa yanjiu de huigu yu fansi"
20世紀王安石變法研究的回顧與反思(1901-1949)
(A Review of and Reflections on Twentieth-Century Research on Wang
Anshi's Reforms (1901-1949)).
Li Huarui 李華瑞
Chūgoku shigaku 12 (2002):17-34.

For an interpretation of the role of scholarship on Wang Anshi in modern Chinese historiography, see:

Chūgoku kin- gendai shi to Chūgoku Sō shi kenkyū no shuchō--Tō Kōmei kyōju
no Ō Anseki kenkyū o chūshin ni
中国近现代史と中国宋史研究の主潮——鄧広銘教授の王安石研究を中心に

(Chinese Modern and Contemporary History and the Mainstream of Chinese
Research on the Song Dynasty--The Case of Professor Deng Guangming's
Research on Wang Anshi).

Kida Tomoo 木田知生

Ryūoku shi tan 龍谷史壇 119-120 (2003): 1-24.

See also [I.B.5.a](#).

For studies on **Yue Fei**, see:

2451/5651.1

LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Chien-kuo i-lai Yueh Fei yen-chiu tsung-shu"

建國以來岳飛研究綜述

(General introduction to studies on Yueh Fei since 1949).

Jen Ch'ung-yueh 任崇岳

Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu tung-t'ai 中國史研究動態 1990.10:18-22.

For Wang Anshi, Yue Fei, and Fan Zhongyan, see also Zhu Ruixi's *Song shi yanjiu* ([I.b.1](#)).

International Relations

On Sino-Japanese relations:

W2665/95

(W) DS751.S83 (Latest)

LoC: DS751 .S83

"Updates on Song History Studies in Japan: The History of Japan-Song
Relations"

Enomoto Wataru

JSYS 33 (2003): 225-234.

On Sino-Korean relations:

(C) DS751 .H8548 2003x

"Haixia liang'an Zhong-Han guanxi shi yanjiu de huigu yu zhanwang"

海峽兩岸中韓關係史研究的回顧與展望

(A Review of the Past and Prospects for the Future of Research on Sino-
Korean Relations in China and Taiwan)

Huang Kuanchong 黃寬重

Shishi, wenxian yu renwu--Song shi yanjiu lunwen ji (Taipei: Dongda
tushu gongsi, 2003). pp. 249-275.

For research on Pu Shougeng, Supervisor of Maritime Trade in Quanzhou during the late Southern Song period, see

2451/5651.1

LoC: DS734.7 .C63 China

"Ershi shiji Pu Shougeng yanjiu shuping"

20世纪蒲寿庚研究述评

(A Critical Review of Twentieth-Century Research on Pu Shougeng).

Li Yukun 李玉昆

Zhongguo shi yanjiu dongtai 2001.8:16-23.

I.C. INTRODUCTIONS TO THE STUDY OF SUNG HISTORY

The three Japanese studies listed below are essential introductions to the primary sources, references tools, and major secondary works for the study of Sung history.

Sudō Yoshiyuki's 周藤吉之 essay on the Five Dynasties and Sung periods in:

(J) D9.S38 LoC: DS803 .S4 Japan	<i>Sekai rekishi jiten</i> 世界歴史辭典 (Encyclopedia of world history). Vol. 23. Tokyo: Heibonsha, 1955, pp. 184-204.
------------------------------------	--

Chikusa Masaaki 竺沙雅章 wrote the chapter on sources for Song studies in the following volume:

J2412/1317 LoC: DS32.5 .A44 1983 Japan	<i>Ajia rekishi kenkyū nyūmon, 1: Chūgoku</i> アジア歴史研究入門：中國 (Introduction to the study of Asian history, 1: China). Kyoto: Dōhōsha, 1983, pp. 227-268.
---	--

An English translation of this essay, by Kenneth Chase, was published in the second edition of *Research Tools for the Study of Sung History* (Albany, NY: Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies, 1996).

Of particular value for social and economic history are Yanagida Setsuko's 柳田節子 and Ihara Hiroshi's 伊原弘 essays on the sources for Sung history and Chinese and Japanese studies, in

J2518/2445	<i>Chūgokushi kenkyū nyūmon</i> 中國史研究入門 (Introduction to the study of Chinese history). Yamane Yukio 山根幸夫 ed. Vol. I. Tokyo: Yamakawa shuppansha, 1984, pp. 423-570.
------------	---

The following guide is modeled on the work edited by Yamane. It includes Chinese translations of the relevant chapters in that work, and supplements critical reviews of scholarship produced in Taiwan and Hong Kong between roughly 1950 and 1985.

Ref(C) DS735.C543 1990x	<i>Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu chih-nan 3: Sung-shih Liao Chin Yuan shih</i> 中國史研究指南，3：宋史遼金元史 (Guide to the study of Chinese history 3: Sung history and Liao, Chin, and Yuan history). Kao Ming-shih 高明士 ed. and trans. Taipei: Lien-ching ch'u-pan-she, 1990. 302p.
-------------------------	---

Also note Hasegawa's account of postwar Japanese Sung studies:

(W) DS12.A45 LoC: DS12 .A45	"Trends in Postwar Japanese Studies on Sung History: A Bibliographic Introduction." Hasegawa Yoshio. <i>Acta Asiatica</i> 50 (1986): 95-120,
--------------------------------	--

which cites the major reference works compiled by Japanese scholars and their studies of the examination and school system, bureaucratic system, and *shih-ta-fu* class.

Chūgoku rekishi kenkyū nyūmon
中國歷史研究入門
(Introduction to the Study of Chinese History)
Tonami Mamoru 磯波護 et al.
Nagoya: Nagoya daigaku shuppankai 名古屋大學出版會, 2006. pp. 127-157, 396-408.

This edited volume contains a chapter introducing the most important secondary scholarship and the main historical resources for research in Five Dynasties and Song China. The focus is on Japanese research, but the compilers also include references to modern Chinese editions and reference works. There is a bibliography in the back. Apart from the main chronological chapters, there are also three separate sections on catalogs, epigraphy, and geography.

The multi-volume series on Chu Hsi school Neo-Confucianism, the *Shushigaku taikai* includes a one-volume introduction to the sources for Chu Hsi studies:

J1237/2174
LoC: B128.C54 S54 Japan
Shushigaku nyūmon
朱子學入門
(Introduction to Chu Hsi Confucianism).
Shushigaku taikai 朱子學大系 Vol. I.
Tokyo: Meitoku shuppansha, 1974.

Finally, note Fang Hao's discussion of 60 important primary sources:

9401/5621
LoC: Z3103 .S59 (Orien China)
"Yen-chiu Sung shih ts'an-k'ao shu-chi chū-yao"
研究宋史參考書籍舉要
(Essential reference works for research on Sung history).
Fang Hao 方豪
Shu-mu chi-k'an 書目季刊 1.1 (1966): 10-14; 1.2 (1966): 73-80;
1.3 (1967): 34-38,

and the discussion of several major primary sources in the bibliography of

(W)JQ 1512.K7
LoC: JQ1512 .K7
Civil Service in Early Sung China, 960-1067.
E. A. Kracke, Jr.
Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1953, pp. 237-249.

For a recent introduction to major primary sources and reference tools, see:

(C) 2665/3513
"*Songshi yanjiu ji qi gongju shu*"
宋史研究及其工具書
(Research in Song History and Reference Materials for It).
Wang Deyi 王德毅
Songshi yanjiu ji 33 (2003):469-495.

This article was originally published in 1989, but went through an update in 2003. The first part reviews major sources in Song history such as *Song shi*, *Song huiyao*, *Sanchao Bei Meng huibian*, *Jianyan yilai xinian yao lu* etc. and lists research tools prepared for each of them. The list is somewhat outdated.

The second part lists research tools in Song history of broader scope. Only print materials are discussed; new electronic resources are not included.

The following article lists the major general histories of the Song period written in China and Taiwan. Even though it focuses on Zhang Qifan's *Songdai shi*, it also serves as a brief introduction to changing approaches in the writing of general Song histories:

Lun duandai Song shi de zhushu--yi "Songdai shi" wei kaocha zhongxin
論断代宋史的著述——以《宋代史》為考察中心
(On General Surveys of Song History--With Focus on *The History of the Song Dynasty*).
Xiao Jianxin 肖建新
Anhui shifan daxue xuebao (renwen shehui kexue ban) 安徽師範大學學報(人文社會科學版) 34.1 (2006): 14-19.

Take note of the following excellent introduction to Yuan studies:

2700/4241.1
LoC: DS752 .L513 1989 China
Yuan-shih hsueh kai-shuo
元史學概說
(General introduction to the study of Yuan history).
Li Chih-an 李治安 and Wang Hsiao-hsin 王曉欣 eds.
T'ien-chin: T'ien-chin chiao-yü ch'u-pan she, 1989.

This reviews Yuan historical studies, abstracts scholarship in many different fields, and introduces primary sources, reference works, and research tools. There are indexes to secondary scholarship in Chinese, Japanese, Russian, and European languages.

II. Bibliographies and Abstracts of Recent Scholarship

For multilingual bibliographies, see:

(W) DS734.95.R49x
LoC: Z7059 .R4
Revue bibliographique de sinologie.
Nouvelle série, vol. 1-.
Paris: Éditions de l'École des Hautes Études en Sciences Sociales, 1983- .

This review annually abstracts several hundred Chinese, Japanese, and Western-language studies on Chinese subjects.

Ref (J) DS5.T69x
Tōyōgaku bunken ruimoku
東洋文獻類目
(Classified bibliography of Oriental studies).
Kyoto: Jimbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1935- .
<http://mousai.kanji.zinbun.kyoto-u.ac.jp/ruimoku/index.html.ja.utf-8>

This indexed bibliography includes Chinese, Korean, and Western-language (including Russian) publications. It also includes book reviews.

II.A. IN WESTERN LANGUAGES

(Rubel) Ref. B. 8
LoC: Z3106 .H45

*Bibliographie des travaux en langues occidentales sur les Song
parus de 1946 à 1965.*
Yves Hervouet.
Bordeaux: So-Bo-Di, 1969. 139 and 28 p.

This is an annotated, classified bibliography of books and articles on Sung published in **1946–1965**, covering economy, politics, religion, arts, etc.

After 1965 see the unclassified but comprehensive bibliographies of Western-language scholarship and occasional selective and annotated bibliographies of Russian-language scholarship in the *Sung Studies Newsletter / Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies / Journal of Sung Yuan Studies*.

II.B. IN CHINESE

Monographs and Articles

For Chinese-language studies for the period 1900 to 1975, see:

DS751.C46 1979x

Bibliographie et index des travaux en Chinois sur les Song, 1900-1975.
宋遼金史書籍論文目錄通檢
Chan Hing-ho (Ch'en Ch'ing-hao)(Chen 陳慶浩)
Paris: Collège de France, Institut des Hautes Études Chinoises, 1979. 271 p.

This includes a key-word index based on article and book titles and a separate author index. Although its contents may be replicated by the bibliographies listed below, the depth of its classification scheme and its inclusion of Chinese-language secondary sources irrespective of origin give it particular value.

For a bibliographical list of the scholarship published in Taiwan and Hong Kong between 1966 and 1981, see:

C2665 6247

"1966-1981 nian Tai Gang Songdai wenhua yanjiu lunzhu mulu"
1966-1981 年台港宋代文化研究论著目录
(Bibliography of Studies on Song Culture Published in Taiwan and Hong Kong, 1966-1981)
Guo Shengbo 郭声波 and Wang Ronggui 王蓉贵
Songdai wenhua yanjiu 宋代文化研究 (Research on Song Culture)
Sichuan daxue Songdai wenhua yanjiu ziliao zhongxin 四川大学宋代文化研究 资料中心, ed.
Chengdu: Sichuan da xue chu ban she.
Vol. 3, pp. 470-547.

For the period **1905–1981** see the following classified, unannotated bibliography, with an author index, covering both Taiwan and the mainland:

DS751.S86 1983x
LoC: Z3108.A3 S8 1983 China

Sung shih yen-chiu lun-wen yü shu-chi mu-lu
宋史研究論文與書籍目錄
(A classified list of Chinese articles and books on Sung history).
Sung Shee (Hsi) 宋晞
Taipei: Chinese Culture University, 1982. 391 p.

This first appeared in parts in *Chinese Culture*, beginning in 1966

The same author published a sequel, covering **1982-2000**:

Ref (C) DS751 .S86 1983x vol.2 *Song shi yanjiu lunwen yu shuji mulu xu bian*
 宋史研究論文與書籍目錄續編
 (A bibliography of Chinese articles and books on [the] Sung history
 (Second series))
 Sung Shee (Hsi) 宋晞
 Taipei: Zhongguo wenhua daxue chubanshu, 2003. iv, 17, 547 p.

It includes Chinese articles (periodicals, conference papers and newspapers) and monographs. The bibliography is divided into two main sections, one for articles and one for monographs. These sections are organized by subject and then author name (stroke order). There is an author index in the back.

This bibliography is based on the following serially published bibliographies:
 For the period **1982-1986**:

LoC: Z3108.A3 S8 1983 China *Sung shih yen-chiu lun-wen yü shu-chi mu-lu* (1982-1986)
 宋史研究論文與書籍目錄
 (Bibliography of of Chinese articles and books on Sung history,
 1982-1986).
 Sung Shee (Hsi) 宋晞 comp.
 This originally appeared in parts in *Chinese Culture*

After 1986 supplements appearing in:

(W) DS701.C647 *Chinese Culture*
 LoC: DS701 .C647 Taipei: Chinese Cultural Research Institute, 1957- (quarterly)

The following is an unannotated, classified bibliography for **PRC studies, 1983-1986**, including books and articles and new editions of Sung-period texts. It has separate sections -- with different classifications -- for books and articles

Sung-shih chu-shu lun-wen tzu-liao chien-mu
 宋代著述、論文資料簡目
 (Brief bibliography of monographs and articles on Sung history).
 T'ang Chien-kuo 湯建國 comp.
 Special issue of *Sung-shih t'ung-hsun* 宋史通訊 1987.9. 60p.

T'ang has also compiled a classified, selective bibliography of **mainland** Chinese books and articles on Sung **cultural history, 1900-1990**:

"Sung-tai wen-hua-shih chu-shu fen-lei hsuan-mu"
 宋代文化史著述分類選目
 (Classified selected bibliography of books on Sung cultural history).
 T'ang Chien-kuo 湯建國
Sung-shih yen-chiu t'ung-hsun 宋史研究通訊 19 (1990): 38-47.

"Sung-tai wen-hua-shih lun-wen tzu-liao hsuan-mu"
 宋代文化史論文資料選目
 (Selected bibliography of articles on Sung cultural history).
 T'ang Chien-kuo 湯建國
Sung-shih yen-chiu t'ung-hsun 宋史研究通訊 18 (1990): 1-88. 88p.

Songdai wenhua yanjiushi
宋代文化研究室
(Research Room for Song Culture)
Xie Peifen 謝佩芬
<http://140.112.141.15>

Contains bibliographical databases of twentieth-century research on Song literature and culture. Under construction.

Songdai yanjiu zhuzuo mulu
宋代研究著作書目
(A Bibliography of Scholarship on the Song Period)
Liu Kuntai 劉坤太
<http://www.songdai.com/shownews.asp?NewsID=155>
<http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~twsung/data/03/bio/biblio.htm>

Includes over 3200 book titles. Arranged by title and pronunciation.

For annual listings of new titles, see the sections on Song history in

C2665 6247 "Song Liao Xia Jin wenhua yanjiu lunzhu mulu"
宋遼夏金文化研究論著目錄
(Bibliography of Research on Song, Liao, Xia and Jin Culture)
Songdai wenhua yanjiu, 1990-
12 (2003):398-486
11 (2002):420-499
10 (2001):389-455
9 (2000):440-499
8 (1999): 312-363
7 (1998):272-327
6 (1996):333-390

This journal also publishes review articles, see [I.B.1](#).

2665/5635 "Song shi yanjiu lunwen (ziliao) suoyin" [also "Song shi yanjiu lunzhu (ziliao) suoyin"]
宋史研究論文(資料)索引 [also 宋史研究論著(資料)索引]
(Index to Research Material on Song History)
Song shi yanjiu tongxun, 1985-
43-44 (2004.1-2): 50-61, 57-82
41-42 (2003.1-2): 62-75, 59-75
39 (2002.1): 63-82
37 (2001.1): 43-57
35 (2000.1): 39-54 (and 37 (2001.1) 57-59)
33 (1999.1): 42-51
32 (1998.2): 47-60
30 (1997.2): 47-59
28 (1996.2): 39-56

Only the bibliographical articles published in the last ten years are listed here. Through 1996 only article titles were included. They are listed by the journal in which they appeared. After 1996 both monographs and articles are listed. Monographs are listed by the name of the publisher. For a list of monographs published between 1990 and 1996, see

- 2665/5635 "(1990-1996nian) Song shi yanjiu zhuzuo lunwenji suoyin"
(1990-1996年)宋史研究著作论文集索引
(Bibliography of monographs and edited volumes in Song
historical research)
Zhao Xiying 赵喜英, Hua Lun 华伦
Song shi yanjiu tongxun
29 (1997.1): 51-55.

Bibliographies of books and articles published in Taiwan, Hong Kong, and the PRC appear regularly in *Sung Studies Newsletter/Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies/Journal of Sung Yuan Studies*. For the updating of bibliography for scholarship in Taiwan and Hong Kong, see also *Han-hsueh yen-chiu t'ung-hsun*.

The following unannotated bibliography reportedly exists as a manuscript at Hang-chou University.

Sung Liao Hsia Chin shih yen-chiu lun-chu so-yin
宋遼夏金史研究論著索引
(Index to scholarly writings on Sung, Liao, Hsia, and Chin history).
Part I, vol. 1, Chinese publications for 1900-1949.9
Part I, vol. 2, PRC publications for 1949.10-1982
Part II, Taiwan and Hong Kong publications for 1949.10-1981
Hang-chou ta-hsueh Ku-chi yen-chiu-so, Sung-shih yen-chiu-so
杭州大學古籍研究所、宋史研究所 comp.
Hang-chou, 1985. 1623 + 223 p.
Not seen

Theses:

Taiwan Song shi yanjiu wang--suoshi lunwen 臺灣宋史研究網--碩士論文
(Song History Research Net in Taiwan--Master's Theses)
<http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~twsung/paper1.htm>
Indexes M.A. theses submitted or under submission at Taiwanese universities. Organized by institution and adviser. 1962-

Taiwan Song shi yanjiu wang--boshi lunwen 臺灣宋史研究網--博士論文
(Song History Research Net in Taiwan--Doctoral Dissertations)
<http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~twsung/paper2.htm>
Indexes Ph.D. dissertations submitted or under submission at Taiwanese universities. Organized by institution and adviser. 1962-

II.C. IN JAPANESE

Japanese Scholarship

Invaluable for its detailed abstracts of selected books and articles published **before 1961** is

- J2662/3551.1 *Sōdai kenkyū bunken teiyō*"
宋代研究文獻提要
(Abstracts of scholarly contributions on the Sung period).
Sōshi teiyō hensan kyōryoku iinkai
宋史提要編纂協力委員會 comp.
Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1961. 842 and 11 p.

Classified. Books and articles are treated separately. There is an author index.

Between 1957 and 1970, three unannotated but classified bibliographies were published covering Japanese scholarship from the **Meiji period (1868-1912) to 1970**:

- (J) DS751.S632 1957x *Sōdai kenkyū bunken mokuroku*
宋代研究文獻目錄
(Catalogue of scholarly contributions on the Sung period).
Sōshi teiyō hensan kyōryoku iinkai
宋史提要編纂協力委員會 comp.
Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1957, 1959, 1970. 240 p.

Note the following selective, classified bibliography of Japanese studies of Sung **cultural history** for **1900-1990**:

- "Sung-tai wen-hua-shih chu-shu fen-lei hsuan-mu, Jih-wen-pan"
宋代文化史著述分類選目日文版
(Classified selected Japanese bibliography on Sung cultural history).
T'ang Chien-kuo 湯建國 comp.
Sung-shih yen-chiu t'ung-hsun 宋史研究通訊 19 (1990): 48-53.

Japanese bibliography can be updated with the annual selective, classified bibliographies:

- (W) DS5.Z99 B66x *Books and Articles on Oriental Subjects Published in Japan in 1956*
LoC: Z3001 .B58 Japan (and annually thereafter)
Tokyo: Tōhō gakkai,

This publication includes English translations of the titles and romanizations of the authors' names.

- Ref (J) DS5.T69x *Tōyōgaku bunken ruimoku*
東洋文獻類目
(Classified bibliography of Oriental studies).
Kyoto: Jimbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1935- .
<http://mousai.kanji.zinbun.kyoto-u.ac.jp/ruimoku/index.html.ja.utf-8>

This indexed bibliography includes Chinese, Korean, and Western-language (including Russian) publications. It also includes book reviews.

Nihon Sōdaishi kenkyū bunken mokuroku (1982-2003) 日本宋代史研究文獻目錄 (1982-2003)
(Bibliography of Japanese Research Materials on Song Dynasty History (1982-2003))
<http://home.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/songdai/mulu.htm>

Compiled by graduate students from Ōsaka shiritsu daigaku 大阪市立大学.

This online bibliography is based on the annual bibliographies in *Shigaku zasshi* 史学雜誌 (I.B.3), and is supplemented with entries found in *Zasshi kiji sakuin* 雜誌記事索引 and *Nihon Chūgoku gakkai hō* 日本中国学会報.

The entries are organized by year and then field. The list is only searchable through a browser search.

For a Chinese translation of these Japanese bibliographies, see:

- C2665 6247 "Ribei Song shi yanjiu wenxian mulu (1982-1997)"
日本宋史研究文獻目錄 (1982-1997)
(Bibliography of Japanese Research Materials on Song Dynasty History (1982-1997))
Wu Hongze 吳洪澤 and Wang Xiaohong 王小紅
Songdai wenhua yanjiu 9 (2000):396-439, 10 (2001):456-510

See also surveys and introductions to the the field by Hasegawa (I.B.3), annual reviews (I.B.3), Chikusa, Yamagida and Ihara (I.C), as well as the various items in *Chung-kuo-shih yen-chiu chih-nan* 中國史研究指南 (I.B.2).

There is also an annual bibliography of scholarship on **literature** from the Sung period:

J5202/5607
LoC: PL2250 .C5612 Japan
"Saikin kokunai bunken mokuroku (Sōdai bungaku)"
最近國內文獻目錄 (宋代文學)
(Bibliography of recent Japanese writings: Sung-period literature).
Chūgoku bungaku hō 中國文學報
京都:京都大学文学研究科中文研究室,1954-
<http://www.bun.kyoto-u.ac.jp/chinese/>

Bibliographies of Japanese scholarship appear regularly in *Sung Studies Newsletter/Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies/Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies/ Journal of Sung Yuan Studies*

Korean Scholarship

2665/5635
"Hanguo Song Liao Jin Xi Xia shi lunwen mulu"
韓國宋遼金西夏史論文目錄
(Bibliography of Korean Research on Song, Liao, Jin and Xi Xia History)
Song shi yanjiu tongxun 34 (1999.2): 43-52.

C2665 6247
"1945-1993nian Hanguo Song Liao Jin Yuan shi yanjiu lunwen mulu"
1945-1993年韓國宋遼金元史研究論文目錄
(Korean Research on Song, Liao, Jin and Yuan History, 1945-1993)
Kim Sōnggyu 金成奎 and Guo Shengbo 郭聲波
Songdai wenhua yanjiu 6 (1996):391-410.

II.D. SPECIALIZED BIBLIOGRAPHIES

In addition to the classified bibliographies listed above by language, there are several specialized bibliographies which include Sung studies. The following lists works under the categories of **politics, society, institutions, economy, and thought**; it covers Chinese and Japanese scholarship, 1903-1970; there is an author index:

II.D.1. General

J2518/5150(1)
Chūgoku seiji shisō to shakai seisaku kenkyū bunken mokuroku I
(*Godai Sō*)
中國政治思想と社會政策研究文獻目錄 1 五代宋
(Bibliography of research on Chinese political thought and social policy, I: Five Dynasties and Sung).
Higashi Ichio 東一夫 and Yoshida Tora 吉田寅 ed.
Tokyo: Chūgoku seiji shisō to shakai seisaku kenkyūkai, 1971. 105 p.

For scholarship on the **T'ang-Sung transition**, see:

K2510/6747(3)
LoC: DS735 .K325 1989
vol. 3 Korea
"Tang-Song pyōnhyōkgi non"
唐宋變革期論
(Theories about the T'ang-Sung transition).

Sin Sǒng-gon 辛聖坤
in *Kangjwa Chungguksa III: Sadaebu sahoe wa Monggo cheguk* 講座中國史 III: 士大夫社會—蒙古帝國, pp. 7-70.

II.D.2. Historiography

For selected Chinese and Japanese studies of the **dynastic histories**, the *Sung History* and the dynastic histories written in Sung, see:

J2518/6512	<i>Chūgoku seishi kenkyū bunken mokuroku</i>
LoC: Z3106 .K664 1977 (Orient Japan)	中國正史研究文獻目錄 (Bibliography of studies on Chinese dynastic histories). Kokusho kankōkai 國書刊行會 comp. Tokyo: Kokusho kankōkai, 1977, pp. 128-141.

II.D.3. Government

For scholarship on Sung **scholar-officials**, see:

K2510/6747(3)	"Songdae sadaeburon"
LoC: DS735 .K325 1989	宋代士大夫論
vol. 3 Korea	(On Sung scholar-officials). Ha Wǒn-su 河元洙 in <i>Kangjwa Chungguksa III: Sadaebu sahoe wa Monggo cheguk</i> 講座中國史III: 士大夫社會—蒙古帝國, pp. 71-125.

II.D.4. Biographical information

For scholarship on Sung rulers, see:

J2518/6512.2	<i>Chūgoku rekidai kōtei bunken mokuroku</i>
LoC: Z3106 .K664 1979	中國歷代皇帝文獻目錄 (Bibliography on Chinese emperors through history). Kokusho kankōkai 國書刊行會 comp. Tokyo: Kokusho kankōkai, 1979, pp. 84-90.

For studies of **Ou-yang Hsiu** in Chinese, Japanese, Korean, and Western languages from 1890 through 1990, see:

9802/82	"Ou-yang Hsiu yen-chiu lun-chu ch'u-pien"
	歐陽修研究論著目錄初編 (Preliminary bibliography of studies of Ou-yang Hsiu). Hsieh P'ei-fen 謝佩芬 comp. <i>Chung-yang t'u-shu-kuan kuan-k'an</i> 中國圖書館館刊 24.2 (1991): 211-242.

Arranged by language. Chinese articles are classified: classical exegesis, historiography, thought, literature, biography, and other topics, with further subheadings. There are a total of 466 Chinese articles and 64 books, 78 Japanese entries, 6 Korean entries, and 10 Western-language entries.

For modern scholarship on **Wang An-shih** in Chinese, Japanese, and Western languages, see:

5343.5/1119	<i>Wang An-shih shu-mu yü so-t'an</i>
	王安石書目與瑣探 (Bibliography on Wang An-shih and some minor studies). Wang Chin-kuang 王晉光 Hong Kong: Hua-feng shu-chū, 1983, pp. 15-68.

Arranged by language and author, with separate sections for books.

Taiwan de Lü Zuqian yanjiu--yi bo- shuoshi lunwen wei zhongxin
 台灣的呂祖謙研究——以博碩士論文為中心
 (Research on Lü Zuqian--with a focus on Master's and Ph.D. Theses)
 Qian Maowei 錢茂偉
http://zdxs.zjnu.net.cn/news_disp.asp?id=55&newstype=4

II.D.5. Geography

For a classified listing of articles on **Szechwan** during the Sung period, mainly in PRC publications, see:

Ch'eng-tu ti-fang-shih lun-chu so-yin
 成都地方史論著索引
 (Index to studies of the Ch'eng-tu region).
 Ch'eng-tu: She-hui k'o-hsueh yen-chiu so, 1983, pp. 80-90.

II.D.6. Social and economic history

For studies on the **social-economic history** of the Sung, see:

K2510/6747(3)	"Songdae ùi Sahoe wa kyǒngje"
LoC: DS735 .K325 1989	宋代—社會和經濟
vol. 3 Korea	(Society and economy of the Sung)
	Yi Pǒm hak 李範鶴
	in <i>Kangjwa Chungguksa III: Sadaebu sahoe wa Monggo cheguk</i> 講座中國史III: 士大夫社會—蒙古帝國, pp. 127-192.

Social History

For a listing of books and articles on the history of the family in Song times, see:

C2665 6247	"Songdai jiazu yanjiu lunzhu mulu"
	宋代家族研究論著目錄
	(Bibliography of Research on the Family during the Song Dynasty)
	Li Pinxiao 粟品孝
	<i>Songdai wenhua yanjiu</i> 8 (1999):305-311.

For protest movements, the following includes bibliographies of works in Western and in Asian languages, arranged by author. There is a subject index.

Ref HS310.T46 1981x	<i>Protest and Crime in China: A Bibliography of Secret Associations, Popular Uprisings, Peasant Rebellions.</i>
	Ssu-yü Teng.
	New York: Garland, 1981. 455 p.

Economic History

For Chinese scholarship on the history of **water utilization** including but not exclusive to the Sung, see:

J8731/5612
LoC: Z7935 .J37 1994

"Chūgoku suirishi kenyū no bunken shōkai"
中國水利史研究の文獻紹介
(Introduction to studies of the history of water utilization).
Fujita Katsuhisa 藤田勝久, Ono Yasushi 小野泰, and Matsuda
Yoshirō 松田吉郎
Chūgoku suirishi kenyū 中國水利史研究 17 (1987): 51-66.

For Chinese and Japanese studies of the history of the **salt industry**, see the following classified bibliography, which includes separate indexes to Chinese and Japanese authors.

J8532/4630.1

Chūgoku engyōshi kenyū bunken mokuroku
中國鹽業史研究文獻目錄 (1926-1988)
(Bibliography of studies of the Chinese salt industry, 1926-1988).
Yoshida Tora 吉田寅 ed.
Tokyo: Risshō daigaku Tōyōshigaku kenkyūshitsu 立正大學東洋
史學研究室1989. 100p.

II.D.7. Philosophy and religion

For a specialized classified bibliography on **Sung Confucianism** or "Sung Learning," see:

(J) B127.N4 S64 1964x
LoC: Z165.C6 H53 (Orien Japan)

Sōgaku kenyū bunken mokuroku
宋學研究文獻目錄
(Bibliography of studies of Sung learning).
Hirotsune Jinsei 廣常人世
Tokyo: Tōkyō daigaku bungakubu Chūgoku tetsugaku
kenkyūshitsu, 1964. 49 p,

and the bibliographies of Chinese and Japanese scholarship in:

J1443.52/7674
LoC: B5234.W35 Y65 (Orien Japan)

"Sō-Mingaku kenyū bunken mokuroku"
宋明學研究文獻目錄
(Bibliography of studies on Sung-Ming Confucianism).
In *Yōmeigaku benran*
陽明學便覽
(Handbook of [Wang] Yang-ming Confucianism).
Yōmeigaku taikei 陽明學大系 12.
Tokyo: Meitoku shuppansha, 1974, pp. 289-364.

For studies of Sung-Yuan-Ming **Neo-Confucianism, Chu Hsi, and academies** through 1989, see

Chu Hsi chi Sung Yuan Ming li-hsueh yen-chiu tzu-liao
朱熹及宋元明理學研究資料
(Research materials on Chu Hsi and Sung-Yuan-Ming Neo-
Confucianism)
Wu I-ning 吳以寧 comp.
Pai-lu tung shu-yuan yen-chiu ts'ung-shu chih I
白鹿洞書院研究叢書之一
n.p: Kuo-chi wen-hua ch'u-pan kung-ssu, 1990. 453 p.

This is a comprehensive classified bibliography of Chinese-language scholarship. There are sections on Chu Hsi, on Sung-Yuan-Ming Neo-Confucianism, on academies, on over 100 thinkers from the period, and a separate listing of books.

For scholarship on **Chu Hsi**, including some non-Chinese scholarship, see:

- Ref (C) B128.C54 C485 1992x *Chu-tzu-hsueh yen-chiu shu-mu 1900-1991*
 朱子學研究書目 1900-1991
 (Bibliography of studies on Chu Hsi from 1900 to 1991).
 Lin Ch'ing-chang 林慶彰 ed., Hsu Wei-p'ing 許維萍 and Feng
 Hsiao-t'ing 馮曉庭 comp.
 Taipei: Wen-chin ch'u-pan-she, 1992.

Includes 2251 items, separated into 16 categories. There is a stroke-count author index for Chinese, Korean, and Japanese authors, and an alphabetical author index for Western languages.

This work is now superseded by:

- Zhuzi yanjiu shumu xin bian, 1900-2002*
 朱子研究書目新編1900-2002
 (A Newly Compiled Bibliography of Research on Master Zhu,
 1900-2002)
 Wu Zhanliang 吳展良
 Taipei: Guoli Taiwan daxue dongya wenming yanjiu zhongxin,
 2005

This bibliography of scholarship on Zhu Xi focuses on Chinese scholarship but also includes non-Chinese scholarship. It includes all types of print publications and is organized by subject. There are no indexes.

- (W) Ref B162.Z99 I52 1985x
 LoC: Z7128.B93 I53 1985 *Guide to Buddhist Philosophy.*
 Kenneth K. Inada.
 Boston: G.K. Hall, 1985. 226 p.

- Ref (W) B126.F8
 LoC: Z7129.C5 F8 *Guide to Chinese Philosophy.*
 1978x Charles Wei-hsun Fu and Wing-tsit Chan.
 Boston: G.K. Hall, 1978. 262p.

- (W) Ref BL1802.Z99 Y82 1985x
 LoC: Z7757.C6 Y8 1985 *Guide to Chinese Religion*
 David C. Yu.
 Boston: G.K. Hall, 1985. 200 p.

On religion, also see:

- Ref (W) BL1802.T524 1985x
 LoC: Z7757.C6 T55 1985 *Chinese Religion in Western Languages: A Comprehensive and
 Classified Bibliography of Publications in English, French and
 German through 1980.*
 Laurence G. Thompson.
 Tucson: University of Arizona Press, 1985. 302 p.

- Ref (W) BL1802.T524 1993
 LoC: Z7757.C6 T556 1993 *Chinese Religion: Publications in Western Languages, 1980
 through 1990.*
 Laurence G. Thompson comp. Gary Seaman, ed.
 Ann Arbor, Association for Asian Studies, 1993. xxviii 302p.

On Taoism:

- Ref (W) BL1920.P36 1988 *A Select Bibliography on Taoism.*

LoC: Z7835.T2 P34 1988

Julian F. Pas.
Stony Brook, NY: IASWR, 1988. 52 p.**II.D.8. Literature**

Ref (C) PL2264 .Z4827 1996x vol.5 *Liang Song wenxue lunzhu jimuzhengbian/xubian*
兩宋文學論著集目正編/續編
(Bibliography of Articles on Song Dynasty Literature--Main Series/Continued)
Liu Dehan 劉德漢
Taipei: Wunan tushu chubanshe, 1996-1997. 2 vols.

Covers scholarship in Chinese and other languages on Song literature published between 1912 and 1990. The first volume covers 1912-1982; the second 1983-1990. Includes journal and newspaper articles and monographs (including dissertations and theses). This bibliography is arranged by broad genres (shi, ci, sanwen, xiaoshuo, xiqu) and by individual authors (224 authors). The material is then arranged by language (Chinese, Japanese, Korean and Western). Within each language group the materials are arranged chronologically. There is an author index in the back.

"Ershi shiji Songdai wenxue yanjiu lunzhu mulu"
二十世紀宋代文學研究論著目錄
(Bibliography of Twentieth-Century Scholarship on Song Dynasty Literature)
Xie Peifen 謝佩芬
<http://140.112.141.15/SungBiblioDB/>

Still under construction.

There is also an annual bibliography of Japanese scholarship on Sung-period **literature**:

J5202/5607
LoC: PL2250 .C5612 Japan *"Saikin kokunai bunken mokuroku (Sōdai bungaku)"*
最近國內文獻目錄 (宋代文學)
(Bibliography of recent Japanese writings: Sung-period literature).
Chūgoku bungaku hō 中國文學報
京都: 京都大学文学研究科中文研究室, 1954-
<http://www.bun.kyoto-u.ac.jp/chinese/>

Bibliographies of articles and monographs on Song literature are periodically published in

(C) | PL2293 .S653x *Songdai wenxue yanjiu nianjian*
宋代文学研究年鑒
(Periodical Review of Research on Song Dynasty Literature)
Wuhan : Wuhan chubanshe, 2001-
Published so far: volumes for 1997/99, 2000/01, 2002/03

For both traditional and modern scholarship on the *tz'u* lyric, see:

(W) Ref PL2311.G56 1975x *A Bibliography of Criticism on T'ang and Sung Tz'u Poetry.*
Stanley M. Ginsberg

- Madison: University of Wisconsin, 1975. 158 p.
- (W) Ref PL2307.Z99 L96 1984
LoC: Z3108.L5 L85 1984x
Guide to Chinese Poetry and Drama.
Richard John Lynn.
Boston: G.K. Hall, 1984. 200 p.
- Ref (W) PL2415.436 1978x
Classical Chinese Fiction.
Winston L. Y. Yang et al.
Boston: G.K. Hall, 1978. 302p.

See also items under IV.A.3.b.

II.D.9. Arts

For recent scholarship on **fine arts** during the Song period, see:

- (W) DS751.S83
LoC: DS751 .S83
"Western Scholarship on Song Painting: The Twentieth Century, A
Draft Bibliography, Classified"
Susan E. Nelson
Journal of Sung-Yuan Studies 30 (2000):175-197.
- (W) DS751.S83
LoC: DS751 .S83
"Art Bibliography and News of the Field from 1983-88."
Julia K. Murray
Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies 20 (1988): 127-136.

III. Bibliographies and Abstracts of Sung-Period Sources

The most informative guide to Sung-period texts of all sorts is

- Ref DS751.S86 1978x
LoC: Z3102 .S77
A Sung Bibliography/Bibliographie des Sung.
Etienne Balazs and Yves Hervouet ed.
Hong Kong: Chinese University Press, 1978. 598 p.

This selective, classified bibliography includes often detailed discussions of the contents of the works cited. There are separate indexes for book titles, authors, and subjects. For brief abstracts of some Sung-period texts, see:

- B9450/2341
Chien-ming Chung-kuo ku-chi tz'u-tien
簡明中國古籍辭典
(Concise dictionary of old Chinese books).
Tung-pei shih-fan ta-hsueh ku-chi cheng-li yen-chiu-so
東北師範大學古籍整理研究所 comp.
Ch'ang-ch'un: Chi-lin wen-shih ch'u-pan-she, 1987. 1124 p.

This work, including 4900 titles from antiquity to 1911, is said to be the precursor of a projected *Chung-kuo ku wen-hsien ta-tz'u-tien* 中國古文獻大辭典 with 35,000 titles.

Note that works under **I.C. Introductions to the Study of Sung History** also introduce selected Sung-period texts.

For a discussion of recent modern critical editions of Sung texts, see:

- 9160/3713 "Tien-chi tseng-hui: Chung-kuo ta-lu hsueh-chieh cheng-li Sung-tai
LoC: DS734.97.T28 H35 tien-chi te hui-ku"
典籍增輝—中國大陸學界整理宋代典籍的回顧
(Review of the scholarly editing of Sung texts on the Chinese
mainland).
Huang K'uan-ch'ung 黃寬重
Han-hsueh yen-chiu t'ung-hsun 漢學研究通訊 12:1 (1993): 1-9.

III.A. MODERN COMPREHENSIVE BIBLIOGRAPHIES

The most comprehensive, but not yet complete, bibliography of extant Song Dynasty titles is

- Ref(C) Z3102 .L57 1995x *Xiancun Song ren zhushu zonglu*
現存宋人著述總錄
(Comprehensive Index of Extant Works by Song Persons)
Liu Lin 劉琳 and Shen Zhihong 沈治宏
Chengdu: Ba Shu shushe, 1995. 12, 530 p.

This union catalog includes titles preserved in major libraries in the PRC, Taiwan, Japan and the US. It also includes titles in the Daoist canon (*Daozang*), the Buddhist canon (*Fozang*) and *Zhongguo congshu zonglu* (Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1986). The list of individual literary collections by Shen Zhihong (III.B.1.a.) is included. For this part, and for the most part, only major editions are listed. New editions not included in Shen Zhihong's work are added.

This index contains 4855 titles; those with authors amount to 2370. In the compilers' estimate, *Zhongguo congshu zonglu* contains over 3000 Song titles, but leaves out over 1300 titles. It also does not list the wide variety of editions included here. The bibliography is organized by subject, according to the traditional sibu classification system supplemented with a category for congshu. Within each subdivision titles are organized more or less chronologically according to the dates of the author.

Titles that were re-issued in Song times are listed separately. Later editions appear under the main titles. Editions are listed as follows: 1) individual editions; 2) congshu; 3) post-1911 editions. Each entry lists holding institution (not for common titles), and the title for the series (when not noted in *Zhongguo congshu zonglu*). There is a table of the number of extant titles for each subject division in front. There is an author and title index.

The following lists the Sung texts found in the *Chung-kuo ts'ung-shu tsung-lu* 中國叢書綜錄 (Catalogue of Chinese collectanea), 3 vols. (Shanghai, 1959-1962; rpt. Shang-hai ku-chi, 1982). Arranged by the romanized name of the author, it includes titles of works, bibliographic category, number of *chüan*, and editions. There is also an index by romanized book titles. This work lists 4500 titles, including variant titles, by 1664 authors.

- Ref(C) Z1003.S5 C541 1977x *An Index to Sung Dynasty Titles Extant in Ts'ung-shu.*
LoC: Z1033.S5 M33 China Brian E. McKnight, comp.
San Francisco: Chinese Materials Center, 1977. 373 p.

Two bibliographies of extant Sung writings include some works not found in the McKnight index. The following series lists 3968 titles, including rare editions and works not listed in the *Ts'ung-shu tsung-lu*. Entries are arranged according to the traditional four-division classification system.

- (W) DS701.C647 "Chin ts'un Sung-jen chu-shu chih-chien shu-mu ch'u kao"
LoC: DS701 .C647 今存宋人著書知見書目初稿
(Draft bibliography of extant works of Sung figures).
Yang Chia-lo 楊家駱 and Chuang Chia-t'ing 莊嘉廷 comp.
Chinese Culture 11.4 (1970): 105-136; 12.1 (1971): 121-156; 12.2
(1971): 115-171; 12.3 (1971): 77-102; 12.4 (1971): 150-172; 13.3
(1972): 119-176; 13.4 (1972): 98-107.

There is considerable overlap between this and the second bibliography below, also arranged according to the four-division classification system, which is based on current library holdings in Taiwan.

B9610/1438

Hsien-ts'un Sung-jen chu-shu mu-lueh

現存宋人著書目略

(Brief catalogue of extant writings by Sung figures).

Kuo-li chung-yang t'u-shu-kuan mu-lu ts'ung-k'an #7.

國立中央圖書館目錄叢刊

Taipei: Chung-hua ts'ung-shu pien-shen wei-yuan hui, 1971. 294

p.

This lists the more common pre-modern editions, primarily in collectanea. Critical notes, following each entry, compare the known editions against the entries in the major Sung-period bibliographies. The table of contents gives the classification scheme. There is no index. Within each category entries appear in approximate chronological order.

The catalogue of writings by **Szechwanese** includes titles of the individuals' works as well as pieces found only in anthologies. Moreover, it collects references to lost writings. It is arranged by place but includes an author and title index:

Ref (C)Z3107.S9 H77 1986

LoC: Z3107.S9 H77 1986 China

Sung-tai Shu-jen chu-tso ts'un-i lu

宋代蜀人著作存佚錄

(Catalogue of extant and lost writings by Sung-period Szechwanese).

Hsu Chao-ting 許肇鼎 comp.

Ch'eng-tu: Pa-Shu shu-she, 1986. 607 p.

It is arranged by modern county in Szechuan but includes stroke-count indexes to authors and titles and notes the period when the author was active.

Song dynasty local gazetteers and their place in the history of difangzhi writing

James M. Hargett

Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies 56.2 (1996): 405-442.

Lists and discusses extant Song Dynasty local gazetteers.

"Songdai tushu bianzuan chuban jishi--tujing (Bei Song); Songdai tushu bianzuan chuban jishi--tujing dili (Nan Song)"

宋代圖書編纂出版紀事—圖經（北宋）；宋代圖書編纂出版紀事—圖經地理（南宋）

(A Chronology of Song Dynasty Compilations and Publications--Gazetteers (Northern Song); A Chronology of Song Dynasty Compilations and Publications--Gazetteers and Geographical Works (Southern Song))

Li Zhizhong 李致忠

Wenxian 文獻 2004.1: 4-16; 2004.3: 19-32; 2004.4: 4-18; 2005.1: 4-24.

This is a detailed chronology of the compilation of geographical works during the Song Dynasty.

III.B. MODERN SPECIALIZED BIBLIOGRAPHIES AND SERIES

As noted above, the following treats selected works in all categories. It is fully indexed and notes editions.

Ref DS751.S86 1978x
LoC: Z3102 .S77

A Sung Bibliography/Bibliographie des Sung.
Etienne Balazs and Yves Hervouet ed.
Hong Kong: Chinese University Press, 1978. 598 p.

III.B.1. Literati Writing

Comprehensive Compilations

5238.5/6246 for v. 41-51,
(C) PL2619.C6 1988

Ch'üan Sung wen
全宋文
(Complete Sung-dynasty prose).
Ssu-ch'uan ta-hsueh Ku-chi cheng-li yen-chiu so 四川大學古籍整理研究所 comp.
Ch'eng-tu: Pa-Shu shu-she, 1988-.

Quan Song wen
全宋文
Sichuan daxue guji zhengli yanjiusuo 四川大學古籍整理研究所
Shanghai: Shanghai cishu chubanshe, 2006.

The preceding is a collection of all literary prose arranged by author in chronological order. An author's compositions are grouped into 16 categories (辭賦、詔令、奏議、公牘、書啟、贈序、序跋、論說、雜記、箴銘、頌讚、傳狀、碑誌、哀祭、祈謝、其他).

A complete table of contents, author index, title index and name index is forthcoming. 150 volumes were projected. Publication with Ba Shu shushe was halted after 50 volumes.

A table of contents for the fifty volumes published to date can be downloaded from *Taiwan Song shi yanjiu wang* 臺灣宋史研究網 (Song History Research Net in Taiwan) at <http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~twsung/qsw.xls>

In 2003 Shanghai cishu chubanshe took over the publication of the collection of all Song texts. It contains the work of over 9000 authors in 360 volumes.

Quan Song ci
全宋詞
(Complete Collection of Song Ci)
Tang Guizhang 唐圭璋
Beijing: Zhonghua shuju 中華書局, 1965.

For indexes, see section [VI.C.b](#).

5237.5/1047

Ch'üan Sung shih
全宋詩
(Complete Sung-dynasty Poetry).
Pei-ching ta-hsueh Ku-wen-hsien yen-chiu-so 北京大學古文學研究所 comp.
Peking: Hsin-hua shu-tien, 1991-

A collection of all Sung poetry, arranged by author in chronological order. Neither Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms rulers nor Liao and Chin authors are included. A complete table of contents, author index, and title index will be appended.

- (C) DS751 .Q333 2003x *Quan Song biji*
 全宋筆記
 Zhu Yian 朱易安, Fu Xuanzong 傅璇琮, eds.
 Zhengzhou: Da xiang chubanshe, 2003-

This is an ongoing project managed by Shanghai shifan daxue guji yanjiusuo. About 500 items are planned. This makes this compilation much more complete than previous series such as Shanghai guji chubanshe's *Song Yuan biji congshu* 宋元筆記叢書, *Song Yuan biji xiaoshuo da guan* 宋元筆記小說大觀 and Zhonghua shuju's *Tang Song shiliao biji congkan* 唐宋史料筆記叢刊. The latter, for example, includes over 40 items. Similar projects for the Tang and Five Dynasties are being undertaken by Hunan keji daxue (formerly Xiangtan shifan xueyuan).

The selection is based on the following criteria: 1) the title has to contain miscellaneous contents; 2) notes focused on one area (yulu, shihua, pu, guanzhen, mingchen yanxing lu, etc.) are not included; 3) anthologies of Song biji are not included (e.g., Lei yuan, Lei shuo, Songbai lei chao, Song ren yishi huibian). If the text only survives in part, emendations are made based on other texts (with references to the sources). The selection is limited to Song authors; Liao, Xia and Jin authors are not included. The titles are arranged chronologically, with some modifications for editorial purposes. Each item is preceded by a brief introductory essay including a biography of the author (if not included in *The Song Dynastic History*), an abstract of the text and a history of its editions. Corrections and annotations to the text are only summarily noted. Annotations are conveniently placed in the top margin.

Reconstructed Collections of Fragments

- Songdai yizhu ji kao*
 宋代佚著輯考
 (Lost Titles from the Song Dynasty Recollected and Investigated)
 Wang He 王河
 Nanchang: Jiangxi renmin, 2004.

The compiler reconstructs 28 titles by collecting passages from extant titles. The focus of the collection is on works and authors related to the Jiangxi region. For each entry there is an introductory part with brief comments on author, title and editions, followed by a collection of fragments. Sources of the fragments are given.

III.B.1.a. Literary Collections

A. Individual Collections

- Ref (C) PL2503.H74 1990x *Hsien-ts'un Sung-jen pieh-chi pan-pen mu-lu*
 現存宋人別集版本目錄
 (Catalogue of extant Sung literary collections of individual authors).
 Shen Chih-hung 沈治宏 ed.
 Ch'eng-tu: Pa-Shu shu-she 巴蜀書社 1990. 430p.

This covers the holdings of 250 PRC libraries, 32 Japanese libraries, the Library of Congress and 521 *ts'ung-shu* 叢書. It includes collections of 739 Sung authors (of which 107 are collections of *tz'u* lyrics). Arranged chronologically by author. There are four-corner indexes to the *ts'ung-shu*, libraries and their locations, and authors. (see also *Xiancun Song ren zhushu zonglu* discussed in the previous section III.A.)

For pre-modern editions of the collected works of 528 individuals in Japanese library holdings, see:

- Ref (J) Z3108.L5 Y64 *Nihon genson Sōjin bunshū mokuroku*
 日本現存宋人文集目錄
 (Catalogue of Sung-dynasty literary collections preserved in Japan).
 Yoshida Tora 吉田寅 and Tanada Naohiko 棚田直彦 comp.
 Vol. 8 of
- Sōdai shakai keizaishi kenkyū hojo shiryō
 宋代社會經濟史研究補助資料
 Tokyo, 1959; revised 1972. 150 p.

Arranged by author, with author and title indexes according to Japanese pronunciation. Includes number of *chüan*, names of editors, date of the edition, and the library collections in which the work is held.

For pre-1868 editions of Song literary collections (including individual collections, anthologies, miscellanies, poetry collections and works of literary criticism), see

- Ref (C) Z3102 .Y46 1996x *Riben cang Song ren wenji shanben gouchen*
 日本藏宋人文集善本鈎沉
 (Digging up Rare Editions of Song Literary Collections Preserved in Japan)
 Yan Shaodang 嚴紹盪, comp.
 Hangzhou: Hangzhou daxue chubanshe, 1996. 3, 1, 375 p., [4] p. of plates.

Song literary collections in Taiwanese collections are listed in:

- Ref (C) PL2264 .Z4825
 1981x *Zhongguo lidai shiwen bieji lianhe shumu*
 中國歷代詩文別集聯合書目
 (Union Catalog of Collected Works of Poetry and Prose throughout Chinese History)
 Wang Minxin 王民信, comp.
 Taipei: Lianjing chuban shiye gongsi, 1981-3. Vol. 6-7.

Titles and editions are organized chronologically by author. Congshu editions are placed after individually circulating editions.

Includes references to author biographies after the list of editions of their work.

There is an author index. The index is in vol. 8 and is a combined index for Song and Yuan works. It is organized by stroke order.

For a meticulously annotated study of editions of extant Song literary collections, see

- (C) Z1029 .Z48 1999x *Song ren bieji xu lu*
 宋人別集叙錄
 (Bibliographic Survey of Collected Works of Song Authors)
 Zhu Shangshu 祝尚書
 Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1999. 2 vols.

This bibliography covers 541 collected works of poetry and prose and individual collections of memorials out of an estimated 800 extant collections. The latter number includes collections of ci poems (*ciji*) and works collected in more general collections which are not discussed here. *Ciji* are not listed because they are covered in Rao Zongyi's 饒宗頤 *Ciji kao: Tang, Wudai, Song, Jin, Yuan bian* 詞集考：唐五代宋金元編 (Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1992). This work is intended to be a critical evaluation of the pros and cons of major editions. It therefore only includes original and major editions, not all. Editions published after the Qianlong reign, editions that have been demonstrated to be false attributions, and those reconstructed from very limited

remnants are also excluded.

In the reference materials section of each entry, postfaces and prefaces as well as entries from catalogs are listed. The list in this edition is not comprehensive. The author aims to publish those bibliographical materials that were not included separately in a volume, titled, "Song ji xu ba huibian" (*Song ren zongji xu lu* (see below), preface, p. 5).

The main title entries are arranged chronologically by the author's year of birth. Titles in the reference section are arranged chronologically by the year of publication.

There is a name and title index at the end of volume 2. The index is according to the four corners system, but there is a stroke order finding aid arranged by first character.

(C) PL2503 W364
2003x

Song ren wenji bianke liuchuan congkao
宋人文集编刻流传丛考

(Investigations into the Compilation, Printing and Dissemination of the Literary Collections of Song Dynasty Authors)

Wang Lan 王岚

Nanjing: Jiangsu guji chubanshe, 2003.

This is study of Song editions and later reprints of the collected works of 32 Song men. The emphasis is on Northern Song literary figures. The Northern Song men included are: Xu Xuan 徐铉, Zhang Yong 张詠, Liu Kai 柳開, Wang Yucheng 王禹偁, Lin Bu 林逋, Fan Zhongyan 范仲淹, Mu Xiu 穆修, Yin Shu 尹洙, Mei Yaochen 梅堯臣, Shi Jie 石介, Ouyang Xiu 歐陽修, Su Qinshun 蘇舜欽, Li Gou 李覲, Su Xun 蘇洵, Wen Tong 文同, Sima Guang 司馬光, Wang Anshi 王安石, Shen Gou 沈遘, Shen Kua 沈括, Shen Liao 沈遼, Kong Wenzhong 孔文仲, Kong Wuzhong 孔武仲, Kong Pingzhong 孔平仲, Su Che 蘇轍, Huang Tingjian 黃庭堅, Qin Guan 秦觀, Chen Shidao 陳師道, Chao Buzhi 晁補之, Tang Geng 唐庚, Su Guo 蘇過. Zhou Zizhi 周紫芝 lived during the Northern-Song Southern-Song divide; Dai Fugu 戴復古 is the only Southern Song author included.

The introduction gives a brief overview of the different methods of compilation used in Song collected works. It also reviews the scanty scholarship on editions and re-editions of Song collected works.

For a listing of 350 Sung literary collections used in compiling the *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin* (Index to biographical materials on Sung figures) in roughly chronological order, see:

Ref (C)DS751.5.S784 1974
LoC: DS751.5 .S97 (Orien China)

Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin

宋人傳記資料索引

(Index to biographical materials on Sung figures).

Ch'ang Pi-te 昌彼得 et al.

Vol. 1.

Taipei: Ting-wen, 1974, pp. 1-15.

The following gives the titles, locations, and brief abstracts of documents pertaining to economic history found in 112 Sung *wen-chi*. There is a detailed analytic index.

(W)HC427.6.H37 G8 1964x
LoC: Z7165.C6 H3

A Guide to Sources of Chinese Economic History, A.D.618-1368.

Robert Hartwell, ed.

Chicago: University of Chicago, 1964. 257 p.

B. Anthologies

Z3108.L5

Song ren zongji xu lu

宋人總集敘錄

(Bibliographical Survey of Anthologies of Song Authors)

Zhu Shangshu 祝尚書

Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 2004. 4, 6, 4, 651, 31 p.

This meticulously annotated bibliography includes all extant zongji that include work by Song authors and were compiled by Song authors. This implies that compilations by Song authors not including Song works are not included. Later compilations of Song authors are also not included. Complete as well as partial copies are listed. Anthologies are defined as anthologies of poetry, prose and combined prose-poetry. Those of memorials and decrees are considered prose anthologies in accordance with Song practice. The author has counted over 300 titles mentioned in catalogs, but only 80 survive and are discussed in this bibliography. The entries are arranged chronologically.

The main differences between this volume and Zhu Shangshu's work on bieji discussed above are: a) This title includes references to all prefaces and postfaces for each title (those cited in the main text are not listed again at the end). b) It includes two appendices: a list of zongji no longer extant and a list of libraries holding the titles described. Appendix one only includes those works for which descriptions are extant. Those for which only the title is known are not listed. Appendix two lists locations in China and abroad. The author refers to *Zhongguo congshu zonglu* for references to most congshu.

The index in the back includes title names, the names of compilers and annotators mentioned in the main text and in appendix one; the titles in appendix two; the names of authors of prefaces and postfaces.

The following is a study of anthologies compiled in Sung known to be extant.

LoC: LH7 .T338a "Chin ts'un Sung-tai tsung-chi k'ao"
 今存宋代總集考
 (Extant Sung-period anthologies).
 Wang Jui-sheng 王瑞生.
T'ai-nan shih-chuan hsueh-pao 台南師專學報 9 (1976): 49-88.

III.B.1.b. Poetry

See the following three works for extensive bibliographies of literary collections, "notes on poetry," and other writings containing or about *shih* 詩 and *tz'u* 詞 poetry:

5214.5/7255 *Sung shih chien-shang tz'u-tien*
 宋詩鑒賞辭典
 (Guide to Sung *shih* poetry).
 Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu ch'u-pan-she, 1987, pp. 1533-1573.

5577/4809 *Sung tz'u chien-shang tz'u-tien*
 宋詞鑒賞辭典
 (Guide to Sung *tz'u* poetry).
 Ho Hsin-hui 賀新輝 ed.
 Peking: Pei-ching Yen-shan ch'u-pan-she, 1987, pp. 1256-1287.

Sung-tz'u ta-tz'u-tien
 宋詞大辭典
 (Great dictionary of Sung *tz'u*).
 Chang Kao-k'uan 張高寬 et al.
 N.p: Liao-ning jen-min ch'u-pan-she, 1990, ch. 2.

For an annotated bibliography of ci collections:

PL2548 .J33 1992x *Ciji kao: Tang Wu dai Song Jin Yuan bian*
 詞集考：唐五代宋金元編
 (A Study of Ci Collections: Tang, Five Dynasties, Song, Jin, and Yuan Periods)
 Rao Zongyi 饒宗頤
 Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1992.

This descriptive bibliography covers both individual collections and anthologies (bieji and zongji). It includes Tang, Wudai, Liao, Jin and Yuan collections, but the vast majority are Song (pp. 38-261). There is an author

and title index in the back. The appendix further includes a bibliography of literary critical titles on ci (Song-Yuan) and composition aids such as melody and rhyme books (Tang-Song). Each entry includes a brief description of author(s), title and editions, and a short reference section.

III.B.1.c. Notes on Poetry

The following contains brief descriptions of 139 *shih-hua* 詩話 texts from the Sung period:

5214.5/0222.3
LoC: Z3108.L5 K86
Sung shih-hua k'ao
宋詩話考
(Study of Sung notes on poetry).
Kuo Shao-yü 郭紹虞
Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1979. 221 p.

Kuo has also compiled:

5214.5/0222.2
LoC: PL2277 .K86 China
Pei-Sung shih-hua k'ao, fu Ssu-k'u chu-lu Nan-sung shih-hua t'i-yao p'ing-shu.
北宋詩話考附四庫著錄南宋詩話提要評述
(Study of Northern Sung notes on poetry with evaluation of the critical remarks on Southern Sung notes on poetry in the *Ssu-k'u ch'üan-shu* catalogue).
Kuo Shao-yü 郭紹虞
Hong Kong: Ch'ung-wen shu-tien, 1971. 78 p.

Kuo has also compiled fragments of lost Sung "notes on poetry":

5214.5/0222.1 (1-2)
LoC: PL2308 .S9 China
Sung shih-hua chi-i
宋詩話輯佚
(Collected fragments of Sung notes on poetry).
Kuo Shao-yü 郭紹虞
Yen-ching hsueh-pao 燕京學報, special issue #14 (1937).
Rpt. Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1980. 623 p.

Finally, note the following study of 29 *shih-hua* texts:

2451/0450
LoC: DS701 .W382 China
"Sung shih-hua ts'ung-k'ao"
宋詩話叢考
(Studies of Sung notes on poetry).
Li Yü-min 李裕民
Wen-shih 文史23 (1984): 193-205.

III.B.1.d. Drama

Note the first two volumes of the following bibliography on drama:

Chung-kuo ku-tien hsi-ch'ü tsung-lu
中國古典戲曲總錄
(Complete catalogue of Chinese classical drama).
Fu Hsi-hua 傅惜華 comp.
Vol. 1: *Sung Chin Yuan tsa-chü yuan-pen ch'üan-mu.*
宋金元雜劇院本全目
Vol. 2. *Sung Yuan hsi-wen ch'üan-mu.*
宋元戲文全目
Peking: Tso-chia ch'u-pan she, 1957-.

Brief accounts of known Sung and Yuan dramas will be found in

B5653/4115
Ku-tien hsi-ch'ü ts'un-mu hui-k'ao

LoC: Z3108.L5 C5353 1982 China 古典戲曲存目彙考
 Chuang I-fu 莊一拂 comp.
 Shanghai: Shang-hai ku-chi chu-pan-she, 1982.
 Vol. I, pp. 1-91.

III.B.1.e. Historical Writings

For a study of works listed in the division of history in the "Treatise on Bibliography" in the *Sung History* lost or existing only in fragmentary form, see:

9535/7233B *Sung shih i-wen-chih shih-pu i-chi k'ao*
 LoC: Z3101.T6 L58 (Orien China) 宋史藝文志史部佚籍考
 (A study of lost texts in the historical section of the Treatise on bibliography in the *Sung history*).
 Liu Chao-yu 劉兆祐
 Taipei: Kuo-li pien-i kuan Chung-hua ts'ung-shu pien-shen wei-yuan-hui, 1984. 3 Volumes.

Originally published in parts in various journals, this cites references to the text in earlier bibliographies and gives a brief biography of the author. A chart gives the status of all historical works in the treatise. There is an author/title index by stroke-count.

Liu Chao-yu has also written a series of articles on Sung-period chronological histories.

- 9802/82 "Sung-tai pien-nien-lei shih-chi k'ao ch'u-pien"
 宋代編年類史藉考初編
 (Preliminary study of Sung-period chronological histories, part I).
Chung-yang t'u-shu-kuan kuan-k'an 中央圖書館館刊 24.1 (1991): 113-139.
- 9802/82 "Hsu-k'ao Sung-tai pien-nien-lei shih-chi erh-shih-i chung"
 續考宋代編年類史藉二十一種
 (Study of 21 Sung-period chronological histories, part II).
Chung-yang t'u-shu-kuan kuan-k'an 中央圖書館館刊 25.1 (1992):73-98.
- 9802/82 "Sung-shih i-wen-chih wei-shou Sung-tai pien-nien-lei shih-chi shih-chiu chung k'ao-lu"
 宋史藝文志未收宋代編年類史藉十九種考錄
 (Study of 19 chronological histories not included in the Treatise on bibliography).
Chung-yang t'u-shu-kuan kuan-k'an 中央圖書館館刊 26.2 (1993):181-195.

Historical works correcting and supplementing *The Song Dynastic History* are gathered in the following collection:

(C) DS735.E673 *Song Liao Jin Yuan zhengshi dingbu wenxian huibian*
 宋遼金元正史訂補文獻彙編
 (A Collection of Texts Correcting and Supplementing the Song, Liao, Jin and Yuan Dynastic Histories)
 Xu Shu 徐蜀, ed.
 Beijing: Beijing tushuguan chubanshe, 2004. 3 vols.

This title is part of the series *Correcting and Supplementing the Twenty-Five Dynastic Histories (Ershiwu shi dingbu 二十五史訂補)*, which includes about 160 titles in total. The first volume includes two additions to *The Song Dynastic History* and is thus of limited use. The series is intended to be used in addition to *Supplementing the Twenty-Five Dynastic Histories (Ershiwushi bubian 二十五史補編)* published by Kaiming

shudian (Shanghai) in 1935 and reprinted by Zhonghua shuju (Beijing) in 1956 and 1986. It only includes titles published before 1949 and does not include those already covered in the aforementioned collection.

III.B.1.f Commentaries on the Classics

For a review of commentaries on the *Book of Change* written in Northern Sung, see:

LoC: PL2464.Z7 W26 *Pei-Sung I-hsueh k'ao*
 北宋易學考
 (Researches on Northern Sung I [*ching*] studies).
 Wang Chi-hsi 王基西
 Taipei: T'ai-wan shih-fan ta-hsueh, 1978. 174 p.

III.B.2. Painting, Calligraphy, and Ceramics

For an index to Sung and Yuan paintings, see:

Ref (W) ND1043.3.C3 *An Index of Early Chinese Painters and Paintings: T'ang, Sung,*
 LoC: ND1043.3 .C3 *Yuan .*
 James Cahill, with Osvald Sirén and Ellen Johnston Laing.
 Berkeley: University of California Press, 1980. 391 p.

For 18 texts related to Sung painting see:

Ref (W) ND1040.L68 1973x *An Annotated Bibliography of Chinese Painting Catalogues and*
 LoC: Z5949.C5 L67 *Related Texts.*
 Hin-cheung Lovell
 Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Center for Chinese Studies.
 (Michigan Papers in Chinese Studies #16), 1973. 141 p.

Gugong bowuyuan cang wenwu zhenpin quanji
 故宮博物院藏文物珍品全集
 (The Complete Collection of Treasures from the Palace Museum)
 Hong Kong: Shangwu yinshuguan, 1995-

Includes separate volumes on Song ceramics, calligraphy, and painting.

Zhongguo meishu quanji (gudai bufen)
 中國美術全集 (古代部分)
 (The Complete Collection of Chinese Art) (The Pre-Modern Period)
 Beijing: Wenwu chubanshe, 1984-1989.

Includes separate volumes on Song painting, sculpture, and calligraphy. A separate volume contains a general index and chronology.

For a comprehensive collection of reproductions of letters written during the Song period:

(C) PL2610 .S86 2000x *Song Yuan chidu*
 宋元尺牘
 (Letters from the Song and Yuan Dynasties)
 [Shanghai shudian 上海書店]
 Shanghai: Shanghai shudian, 2000.

This work contains reproductions of 210 letters from the Song and Yuan periods by 120 authors. Song pieces and authors dominate, with 113 authors working during the Song. This volume makes available the

calligraphy of men other than the famous Song calligraphers, Su Shi, Huang Tingjian and Mi Fei. It also presents letters in their materiality, as opposed to transcribed versions in wenji. The letters are transcribed in the back. Short biographies of the letter writers are appended.

For a listing of 1126 Sung ceramics in the collection of the National Palace Museum, Taipei, see:

6644/3136
LoC: NK4565.4 .K86 1971

Sung Yuan tz'u-ch'i t'e-chan mu-lu.
宋元瓷器特展目錄
(Catalogue of a special exhibit of Sung and Yuan ceramics).
Taipei: Kuo-li ku-kung po-wu yuan, 1971. 113 and 47 p.

III.B.3. Taoist Writings

(W) BL1920.B64 1987
LoC: Z7835.T2 B64 1987

A Survey of Taoist Literature: 10th-17th Centuries.
Judith M. Boltz.
China Research Monographs #32.
Berkeley: Institute of East Asian Studies and the Center for Chinese Studies, University of California, 1987. 417 p.

This discusses traditions of Taoist writing under the categories: 1) Revelation and Ritual, 2) Hagiography, 3) Topographic, Epigraphic, and Historiographic Treatises, 4) Literary Anthologies and Dialogic Treatises, and 5) Exegeses and Encyclopedic Compilations. There are indexes to names and titles.

(W) BL1920.V36 1984
LoC: BL1920 .V36 1984

Taoist Books in the Libraries of the Sung Period.
Piet van der Loon.
London: Ithaca Press, 1984. 189 p.

This is a critical study and index, in Chinese and English. An introduction discusses the catalogues of the Imperial Library, private collections, and the Taoist canon. Includes bibliographical references, a stroke-number index to texts in the Imperial Library and personal collections, and a personal-name index.

III.B.4. Buddhist Writings

For a bibliography of works by Song Dynasty monks, see:

C2665 6247

"Song seng zhushu kao"
宋僧著述考
(A Study of the Works of Song Dynasty Monks)
Li Guoling 李國玲
Songdai wenhua yanjiu 9 (2000):325-334; 10 (2001):311-27; 11 (2002):395-408; 12 (2003):318-342.

The following article contains biographical information on Tsan-ning 贊寧(919-1001), the most influential of Sung Buddhist historians; notes sectarian histories of the Ch'an sect and Buddhist chronicles; and gives various bibliographical information including a chronological table of Buddhist historical works written during the Sung period.

(W) PJ5.D4
LoC: PJ5 .D4

"Buddhist Historiography in Sung China."
Jan Yun-hua.
Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft 114 (1964): 360-381.

The following older work lists translators (Northern Sung: Appendix II, cols. 449-457) and authors (Northern and Southern Sung: Appendix III, cols. 464-466) of writings from the Sung period in the Buddhist canon.

Ref(W) BQ1219.N36 1883
LoC: Z7059 .M18 China

A Catalogue of the Chinese Translation of the Buddhist Tripitika.
Bunyii Nanjio [Nanjō Bun'yū] 南條文雄 (1849-1927) comp.
Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1883. 240 p.
McMullen # 176.

III.C. SUNG-PERIOD BIBLIOGRAPHIES

1) The most comprehensive extant bibliography compiled in Yuan, although based on Sung-period historiography, is the "Treatise on Bibliography" (*I-wen chih*) in the *Sung shih/Sung History*. This, later supplements, and other Sung bibliographies of government holdings have been issued in a single volume, with a single author/title index, arranged according to the four-corner system. Note that bibliographies compiled in Sung included pre-Sung works in government libraries.

Ref(C) Z3102.S8 1957x

Sung shih i-wen chih, pu, fu-pien
宋史藝文志補附編
(The *Sung history* Treatise on bibliography, amended and supplemented).
Shanghai: Shang-wu yin-shu-kuan, 1957. 560 and 159 p.

Reprinted as:

9535/7171b
LoC: Z3102 .T6 (Orien China)

Sung shih i-wen chih kuang-pien.
宋史藝文志廣編
Taipei: Shih-chieh shu-chü, 1963. 500 and 150 p.
McMullen #67.

These lists occasionally include some information on the author. The majority of works listed are lost.

Song shi yiwenzhi kaozheng
宋史藝文志考證
(Verifying "The Bibliographical Survey" in *The Song Dynastic History*)
Chen Lesu 陈乐素
Guangdong: Guangdong renmin, 2002. 715 p.

This title was compiled over a fifty-year period. Chen Lesu started working on it in earnest in 1941. His son, Chen Zhichao, edited it into its final form. It consists of three parts. In Part One, the main part, all entries in "The Bibliographical Survey" are read against entries on the same titles in other Song materials. This part allows user to check the accuracy of any title listed in the survey. Part Two is a descriptive list of types of errors in the survey, each illustrated with examples. Part Three consists of miscellaneous research notes.

2) The following is the mid-eleventh-century bibliography of the imperial library collection.

B9605/1147.8(1-2)
LoC: Z3101 .C496 1900 (Orien
China)

Ch'ung-wen tsung-mu.
崇文總目
(Bibliography of the Ch'ung-wen library).
Wang Yao-ch'en 王堯臣(1002-1058) et al. comp.
Kuo-hsueh chi-pen ts'ung-shu edition.
Shanghai: Shang-wu yin-shu kuan, 1939. 407 p.

Two Southern Sung annotated bibliographies of private holdings are extant. Both provide material on the author and, in many instances, the contents of the listed work. They are organized according to the four-division classification system.

3)

B9625/1202 *Chün-chai tu-shu chih.*
 郡齋讀書志
 (Record of Reading at the Prefectural Studio).
 Ch'ao Kung-wu 晁公武 (?-1171).
 Ch'ang-sha: Wang Hsien-ch'ien 王先謙, 1884.

For a carefully collated edition, see

(C) 9625 1202.1 *Junzhai dushuzhi jiaozheng*
 郡齋讀書志校證
 (Record of Reading at the Prefectural Studio Collated).
 Chao Gongwu 晁公武
 Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1990. 2, 17, 146, 1404, 129 p.

This edition also includes a four-corner index to titles and authors.

For a study of the contents of this work, the author's life, and a list of those texts no longer known to be extant, see

9625/1202.7
 LoC: Z3102 .L58 (Orien China) *Ch'ao Kung-wu chi ch'i Chün-chai tu-shu chih*
 晁公武及其郡齋讀書志
 (Ch'ao Kung-wu and his *Chün-chai tu-shu chih*).
 Liu Chao-yu 劉兆佑
 Taipei: Wen-hua chi-chin hui, 1969. 190 p.

4)

B9625/7951 *Chih-chai shu-lu chieh-t'i*
 直齋書錄解題
 (Critical Remarks on the *Catalogue of Straightforward Studio*).
 Ch'en Chen-sun 陳振孫 (c.1190-1249+).
 No place: Chiang-su shu-chü, 1883. 22 *chüan*

For a punctuated edition with author and title indexes, see

(C) 9625 7951c *Zhizhai shulu jieti*
 直齋書錄解題
 (Critical Remarks on the *Catalogue of Straightforward Studio*).
 Chen Zhensun 陳振孫 (c.1190-1249+).
 Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1987. 4, 10, 713, 126 p.

There is a separate title index for Ch'en Chen-sun's work.

B9625/7951.1 "Chokusai shoroku kaidai shomei sakuin"
 直齋書錄解題書名索引
 [*Chih-chai shu-lu chieh-ti shu-ming so-yin*]
 (Index to titles in the *Chih-chai shu-lu chieh-t'i*)
 Ishida Mikinosuke 石田軒之助
Tōyōshi kenkyū 東洋史研究 Supplement to vol. 3.2 (1937). 51 p.

Chen Zhensun's work can also be accessed online at

<http://kanji.zinbun.kyoto-u.ac.jp/db-machine/toho/html/B002menu.html>

In the thirteenth century, Ma Tuan-lin incorporated the entries in both these works, drew on other bibliographies, and supplemented them with citations from other scholars in a *75-chüan* bibliography in:

R9290/43(11-12) *Wen-hsien t'ung-k'ao*
 文獻通考
 (Comprehensive study of the written record).
 Ma Tuan-lin 馬端臨(c.1250-1325).
Shih-t'ung 十通 edition.

Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1935. Vol. 2, *chüan* 174-249.

The bibliographic section of the *Wen-hsien t'ung-k'ao* is available in the following annotated edition:

B9576/7207 *Wen-hsien t'ung-k'ao ching-chi k'ao*
 文獻通考經籍考
 (A study of the bibliography in the *Wen-hsien t'ung-k'ao*)
 Ma Tuan-lin.
 Shanghai: Hua-tung shih-fan ta-hsueh, 1985. 1828 p.

Note also the "Treatise on Bibliography" in the

R9290/43(4-6) *T'ung chih*
 LoC: DS735 .S483 vol. 4 (Orien 通志
 China) (Comprehensive record).
 Cheng Ch'iao 鄭樵(1104-1162).
Shih-t'ung edition.
 Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1935. Vol. 1, *chüan* 63-70.

There is also a one-volume index to the *Shih-t'ung* which includes the *Wen-hsien t'ung-k'ao* and the *T'ung-chih*. It includes a four-corner index as well as a category index (*fen-lei so-yin*).

R9290/43(21) *Shih-t'ung so-yin*.
 十通索引
 (Index to *Shih-t'ung*).
 Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1937. 325 and 168 p.
 McMullen #108.

Note also the *Yü-hai*, a Southern Sung encyclopedia including extensive information on Sung and pre-Sung works. Although it does not arrange information in the form of a bibliography, the section on writings mentions specific editions and provides useful information on authors and contents. The table of contents gives the categories.

9100/61(943-948) *Yü-hai*
 LoC: AE2 .W3 1964 (Orien China) 玉海
 (Sea of jade).
 Chüan 35-63.
 Wang Ying-lin 王應麟(1223-1296) comp.
 *Ssu-k'u ch'üan shu*四庫全書, vol. 944.

For a detailed table of contents for the *Yü hai*, see:

Gyokkai mokuroku
 玉海目錄
 [*Yü-hai mu-lu*]
 (Table of contents of the *Yü-hai*).
 Yoshida Tora 吉田寅 and Tanada Naohiko 棚田直彦 comp.
 Tokyo: Kyōiku daigaku Ajiashi kenkyūkai, 1957. 104 p.
 McMullen #171.

Other Southern Sung encyclopedias that quote extensively from earlier texts are discussed in Teng and Biggerstaff, *An Annotated Bibliography of Selected Chinese Reference Works*, pp. 90-92.

III.D. SUNG EDITIONS AND INSCRIPTIONS

Catalogs, Bibliographies and Colophons

(C) Z240.4.S664 2003x *Song Yuan ban shumu tiba jikan*

宋元版書目題跋輯刊
 (Collection of Catalogs and Colophons of Song and Yuan Editions)
 Jia Guirong 賈貴榮 and Wang Guan 王冠, eds.
 Beijing: Beijing tushuguan chubanshe, 2003. 4 vols.

This collection conveniently reproduces catalogs or sections of catalogs listing Song and Yuan editions. Around thirty titles, mostly dating from Qing times, are included. There is an index by stroke order and pinyin. Titles are listed under the original title only. This means that readers have to search a text under all variant titles to find all relevant editions.

The following is described by the Harvard-Yenching Library as "An index to descriptive notices of Chinese rare editions, appearing in 102 public and private library catalogs, collections of colophons and reading notes, and other bibliographical sources, which appeared from the Sung dynasty to the 1960s. The main body of the work comprises four-corner indices to the titles and authors of the rare books described. Stroke-count and *pinyin* indices to first characters are added for convenience. At the front of the volume is a list of the 102 sources (9 of them Japanese) with full bibliographical information. "

Ref (C) Z3101.L745 1991 *Ku-chi pan-pen t'i-chi so-yin*
 古籍版本題記索引
 (Index to descriptive notes of ancient editions).
 Lo Wei-kuo 羅偉國 and Hu P'ing 胡平
 Shanghai: Shang-hai shu-tien, 1991. 941pp.

The following two studies contain appendices of extant and non-extant Song printed editions:

(W) Z244.6.C6 C438 *Printing for Profit : The Commercial Publishers of Jianyang, Fujian (11th-17th centuries)*
 2002
 Lucille Chia
 Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center, 2002. xxi, 442 p.

"Books and Printing in Sung China (960-1279)"
 Ming-sun Poon
 Ph. D. diss., University of Chicago, 1979.

W9270/82.2 "Southern Song Printing at Hangzhou."
 Sören Edgren.
Bulletin of the Museum of Far Eastern Antiquities 61 (1989): 1-212.

includes "A Bibliography of Southern Song Imprints from Hangzhou and Vicinity" (pp. 82-112), "A Bibliography of Southern Song Imprints from Liangzhe and Related Areas" (pp. 113-27), an index to these two bibliographies (pp. 113-34), and a list of blockcarvers' names (pp. 135-68).

For 253 Sung and Yuan editions in the Seikadō Library, see:

Seikadō bunko Sō-Gen hanto roku
 靜嘉堂文庫宋元版圖錄
 (Catalogue of Sung and Yuan editions in the Seikado library).
 Tōkyō: Kyūko shoin, 1992.

For holdings of Song editions in Taiwan, see:

Taiwan gong cang Song- Yuanben lianhe mulu
臺灣公藏宋元本聯合書目
(Union Catalog of Song and Yuan editions in Taiwanese Public
Collections)
Chang Bide 昌彼得
Taibei: Guoli zhongyang tushuguan, 1955.

For 36 Sung-Yuan editions of Buddhist sutras at Ryūkoku University, see:

J3305/6664 "Ryūkoku daigaku Ōmiya toshokan shozō no Sō Genpan Butten ni
tsuite"
龍谷大學大宮圖書館所藏の宋元版佛典について
(On the Sung-Yuan editions of Buddhist sutras in the Ōmiya library
at Ryūkoku university).
Kitamura Takashi 北村高
In *Hino Akira hakushi kanreki kinen ronbunshūrekishi to denshō*
日野昭博士還歴記念論文集歴史と傳承
Hino Akira hakushi kanreki kinenkai comp.
Kyōto: Nagada Fumimasadō 1988, pp. 785-811.

Under each item, the author gives the available information concerning its title, cover, carvers' names, date, etc.

Reproductions

Twenty-one titles from the Kunaichō Shoryōbu collection of fifty-five Song titles have been exquisitely reproduced in the series:

(C) AC149 .R52 Riben gongneiting shulingbu cang Song Yuan ban Hanji yingyin congshu. Di
1-2 ji
日本宮内庁書陵部藏宋元版漢籍影印叢書. 第一輯, 第二輯
(Series of Reprints of the Song Yuan Editions from the Japanese Collection
Kunaichō Shoryōbu)
Quanguo gaoxiao guji zhengli yanjiu weiyuanhui 全國高校古籍整理研究委
員會
Beijing: Xianzhuang shuju, 2001-2003. 118+75 vols.

Song ji zhenben congkan
宋集珍本叢刊
(Rare Editions of Song Collected Works Series)
Sichuan daxue guji zhengli yanjiusuo 四川大學古籍整理研究所
Beijing: Xianzhuang shuju, 2004.
108 vols.

This is another outgrowth of the *Quan Song wen* project conducted by Sichuan daxue guji zhengli yanjiusuo. It is also part of a new large project, the Confucian Canon (Ru zang), this institution has embarked upon. This series contains 405 titles in over 10,000 juan. The vast majority of the volumes (through vol. 91) contain reproductions of individual literary collections of the work of Song authors (wenji); the remaining volumes (through vol. 107) are devoted to a selection of literary anthologies (zongji). The following selection criteria were used in identifying suitable editions: 1) Song and Yuan editions are generally included; 2) Ming and Qing editions are included if there are no earlier editions, if earlier editions are incomplete or if they have a different genealogy than extant earlier editions. 3) Post-Yuan editions are also included if they have been carefully collated or annotated. 4) Those reproduced in other reproduction series such as *Sibu congkan* (see VI.F) and *Beijing tushuguan suocang zhenben congkan* are excluded.

The last volume contains abstracts of all titles included. Each abstract traces the title's publication history, as well as its collection history (seals of ownership of particular copies as well as entries of editions in catalogs). It also gives a summary biography of the author and describes the contents. As in the Siku quanshu an individual title's abstract is also reproduced in its front pages.

The original copies have been scanned, enhanced, and fitted to a standard size. The original fonts and pagination have been preserved, but in the middle columns title, series title, and juan/page information has been electronically inserted.

Volume 108 contains indexes of titles and authors by stroke order.

- (C) Z186.C5 S66 2000x *Song Yuan banke tu shi*
 宋元版刻图释
 (Illustrations and Explanations of Song through Yuan Woodblock Prints)
 Chen Jian 陈坚 and Ma Wenda 马文大
 Beijing: Xueyuan chubanshe, 2000. 4 vols.

This title includes reprints of the first page of the first chapter of over 660 Song printed titles and around 100 Song and Yuan woodblock illustrations. It also includes 55 titles from Xi Xia, Liao and Jin times and over 370 Yuan titles. Titles are organized by period and then by type of printer: government, family, and commercial printshops. Titles are also subdivided by region.

For each title there is a brief description listing bibliographic details including place and time of publication. Time references include dates converted to the western calendar.

For smaller collections of reproductions, focusing on specific holdings, see:

Guoli zhongyang tushuguan Songben tulu
 國立中央圖書館宋本圖錄
 (An Illustrated Record of Song and Yuan Editions at the Central Library in Taiwan)
Guoli zhongyang tushuguan 國立中央圖書館
 Taipei: Zhonghua congshu weiyuanhui 中華叢書委員會, 1958.

Guoli gugong bowuyuan Songben tulu
 國立故宮博物院宋本圖錄
 (An Illustrated Record of Song Editions at the Palace Museum)
 Taipei: Guoli gugong bowuyuan 國立故宮博物院, 1977.

Songban shu tezhan mulu
 宋版書特展目錄
 (Catalog of the Song Editions Special Exhibit)
 Guoli gugong bowuyuan bianji weiyuanhui 國立故宮博物院編輯委員會
 Taipei: Guoli gugong bowuyuan 國立故宮博物院, 1986.

Sōhon shoei
 宋本書影
 (Reproductions of Song Editions)
 Nagasawa Kikuya 長澤規矩也
 Tokyo: Nihon shoshi gakkai 日本書誌學會, 1931.

Toshoryō Sōhon shoei
 圖書寮宋本書影
 (Reproductions of Song Editions)
 Tokyo: Nihon shoshi gakkai 日本書誌學會, 1936.

Sōhan
 宋版
 (Song Editions)
 Tenri toshokan 天理圖書館
 Tenri: Tenri daigaku 天理大學出版部, 1962.

Sheyuan suojian Songban shuying

涉園所見宋版書影

(Reproductions of Song Editions Seen by Sheyuan)

N.p.: Mr. Tao Xiang 武進陶氏涉園, 1937; rpt.: Yangzhou: Jiangsu

Guangling guji keyshe 江蘇廣陵古籍刻印社, 1998; Beijing: Beijing

tushuguan chubanshe 北京圖書館出版社, 2003.

Research

Nagasawa Kikuya's extensive studies of nearly all Sung-Yuan editions are collected in

J9403/7358(3)

LoC: Z3301 .N32 1982 Japan

Sō Genpan no kenkyū

宋元版の研究

(Studies on Sung and Yuan editions).

Nagasawa Kikuya 長澤規矩也

In *Nagasawa Kikuyachosaku shū*

長澤規矩也著作集 vol. 3.

Tokyo: Kyūko shobō 汲古書屋, 1983. 526 p.

This includes exhibit catalogues (pp. 9-35, 93-124), a study of commercial publishing (36-89), lists of library holdings (219-270), names of block carvers (128-196), etc.

Ozaki Yasushi has written on Sung-Yuan editions of the dynastic histories and the *Tzu-chih t'ung-chien*.

J2460/7200

LoC: DS750.62 .O95 1989 Japan

Seishi Sō Genpan no kenkyū

正史宋元版の研究

(Studies on Sung-Yuan editions of the dynastic histories).

Ozaki Yasushi 尾崎康

Tokyo: Kyūko shoin, 1989.

J9210/4302

LoC: PL700 .K45 (Orien Japan)

"Sō Gen kan *Shiji tsugan ni tsuite*"

宋元刊資治通鑑について

(On the Sung and Yuan editions of *Tzu-chih t'ung-chien*).

Ozaki Yasushi 尾崎康

Shidōbunko ronshū 斯道文庫論集 23(1989):171-224.**Aids in Identifying Editions**

For a listing of 370 Sung and Yuan editions and the names of printing-block carvers, see

9432/1130

Ku-chi Sung Yuan k'an-kung hsing-ming so-yin

古籍宋元刊工姓名索引

(Index to the names of carvers of Sung and Yuan editions).

Wang Chao-wen 王肇文 comp.

Shanghai: Shang-hai ku-chi, 1990. 406 p.

Carvers' names are arranged in four-corner sequence and include references to the 370 texts used. There is a separate section describing these texts, arranged according to the traditional four divisions of bibliography.

Recall also the appropriate section of Nagasawa Kikuya's book noted above. This appeared originally as

J9401/5070 "Sō kanpon kokukō meihyō"
 宋刊本刻工名表
 (Table of carvers' names in Sung editions).
 Nagasawa Kikuya 長澤規矩也
Shojigaku 書志學 20 (1971, 11): 35-62; 33, 34 (1984, 5): 36-55.

This includes 187 Sung editions. Carvers' names are listed for each book.

Note too

J9401/5070 "Tenri toshokan zō Sō kanpon kokukō meihyō"
 天理圖書館藏宋刊本刻工名表
 (Table of carvers' names in Sung editions in the Tenri library).
 Kaneko Kazumasa 金子和正
Shojigaku 書志學 18 (1971, 2): 36-47.

which includes the carvers' names for 21 Sung editions. Names are ordered by stroke count.

Song Yuan shuke paiji tulu
 宋元書刻牌記圖錄
 (Illustrated Record of Song and Yuan Printers' Marks)
 Lin Shenqing 林申清
 Beijing: Beijing tushuguan chubanshe, 1999. 8, 5, 138 p.

lists printshop marks for government and private printers.

Inscriptions

For a guide to sources published up to 1987, see:

"Inscriptions: Historical Sources for the Song"
 Valerie Hansen
The Bulletin of Sung Yuan Studies 19 (1987): 17-25.

Now slightly out of date as many new resources have become available in recent years.

Indexes

For inscriptions appearing in Wang Hsiang-chih's cultural geography of Southern Sung, see the index appended to:

3025/1173b *Yü-ti chi-sheng*
 LoC: DS706.5 .W28 1971 (Orient) 與地紀勝
 China) (Records of famous places).
 Wang Hsiang-chih 王象之 (*chin-shih* 1195) comp.
 Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1992. 8 volumes.

Note the following guide to the major collection of inscription collections:

(W) PL2448.K79 1991
 LoC: PL2448 .K79 1991 *Annotated Bibliography to the Shike shiliao xinbian.*
 Dieter Kuhn and Helga Stahl comp.

Heidelberg: Edition Forum, 1991. 283p

Of particular value, in addition to the usual bibliographic information, are indications of the dates of the author or compiler, the time period covered by the work, and the geographical region covered by the work. There is an alphabetical index to authors and compilers. And there is a list of persons whose epitaphs have been completely transcribed.

Shike shiliao xinbian di yi, er, sanji shuming zuozhe suoyin
 石刻史料新編第一, 二, 三輯書名著者索引
 (Title and Author Index to the first, second, and third series of *Shike shiliao xinbian*)
 Takahashi Tsuguo 高橋繼男
 Taipei: Xinwenfeng 新文豐, 1995.

Reproductions and Series

(C) PL2448 .S45 2003x *Songdai shike wenxian quanbian*
 宋代石刻文獻全編
 (A Complete Collection of Song Dynasty Inscriptions)
 Zhongguo guojia tushuguan Shanben jinshi zu 中國國家圖書館善本金
 石組
 Beijing: Beijing tushuguan chubanshe, 2003.
 4 vols.

This set contains reproductions of over 3000 inscriptions collected from around 100 compilations. Items were cut when reproduced elsewhere, when they did not contain the full text or when the text was deficient as to be incomprehensible. The compilers allege that only a small number has been left out this way. The layout of the original compilation is preserved, but page numbers were removed. There is a table of contents and an index of titles by stroke order. The usefulness of this collection is limited. It is in clear need of chronological, geographical, institutional or thematic indexes.

Rubbings of 1300 Sung inscriptions are reproduced in:

(C) PL2448.P45 1989 *Pei-ching t'u-shu-kuan ts'ang Chung-kuo li-tai shih-k'o t'o-pen hui-pien*
 北京圖書館藏中國歷代石刻拓本匯編
 (Collection of Chinese stone rubbings, by dynasty, in the Peking library).
 Cheng-chou: Chung-chou ku-chi ch'u-pan-she, 1989-1991. 100 volumes.

This collection of Chinese stone rubbings from 475 B.C. to A.D. 1949 has 8 volumes for the Sung period. The volumes are ordered chronologically. A separate index volume includes a place index and a stroke-count title index.

Zhongguo lidai shike shiliao huibian
 中國歷代石刻史料匯編
 (Collection of Chinese stone rubbings throughout the Dynasties)
 Beijing shutongwen shuzihua jishu youxian gongsi 北京書同文數字化技術有限公司, Wanfang shuju dianzi chubanshe 萬方數據電子出版社, 2004.

Includes over 1000 collections of epigraphic texts (including the epigraphy sections in local gazetteers). This system allows for full-text searching.

Lidai shike shiliao huibian

歷代石刻史料匯編

(Collection of Chinese stone rubbings throughout the Dynasties)

Guojia tushuguan jinshizu 國家圖書館善本金石組

Beijing : Beijing tushuguan chubanshe 北京圖書館出版社, 2000.

There are four volumes of Song epigraphic texts out of a total of sixteen. There is a title index by stroke order.

According to Zhao Chao's 赵超 general survey of archeological finds of biographical materials since 1949, around 400 items dating from the Song period have been identified. (*Gudai muzhi tonglun* 古代墓志通论. Beijing: Zijincheng chubanshe, 2003. pp. 181-184.) For recent collections of funerary inscriptions unearthed after 1949 with substantial Song coverage, consult:

(C) NK3634.A2 X534

Xin Zhongguo chutu muzhi

新中国出土墓誌

(Funerary Inscriptions Unearthed in New China)

Zhongguo wenwu yanjiusuo 中国文物研究所

Beijing: Wenwu chubanshe, 1994-

So far the volumes for Henan (118 Song inscriptions), Shaanxi (13), Chongqing and environs (39), and Beijing (0) have been published. This series focuses on funerary inscriptions that have never been published before; those included in previous collections or circulating as rubbings are not included. Each volume includes a plate of each rubbing, a bibliographical description and the transcribed text. (The editorial policies require reproductions of the original steles, but those do not appear in the volumes published so far.) The volumes are either arranged by dynasty with place indexes at the end, or by place with a chronological index at the end. An index of all personal names mentioned in the inscriptions is also prescribed for all volumes according to the editorial policies.

(C) CN1161.K4 C44 1991x

Jiangxi chutu muzhi xuanbian

江西出土墓志选编

(Jiangxi jiaoyu chubanshe)

Chen Boquan 陈柏泉

Nanchang: Jiangxi jiaoyu chubanshe, 1991. 4, 12, 594 p.

This anthology includes punctuated transcriptions of newly unearthed funerary inscriptions from Jiangxi Province (Northern Song: 34; Southern Song: 59). It also includes 28 Song land contracts (Northern Song: 7; Southern Song: 21).

(C) DS797.44.L866

Luoyang chutu muzhi zuzang di ziliao huibian

洛阳出土墓志卒葬地资料汇编

(Collected Materials on Funerary Inscriptions and Burial Grounds

Unearthed in Luoyang)

Yu Fuwei 余扶危 and Zhang Jian 张剑

Beijing: Beijing tushuguan chubanshe, 2002. 2, 28, 607 p.

This work indexes only those funerary inscriptions discovered before 1998 for which the place of discovery is known. Each entry covers the title, the name of the biographee, place of birth, time of death, place of death, time of burial, place of burial, location of discovery. The materials are culled from 12 collections published between the Qing Dynasty and 1996. It includes around 140 Song inscriptions.

(C) CN1161.C49 C48 1984

Quanzhou Yisilan jiao shike

泉州伊斯兰教石刻

(Islamic Inscriptions from Quanzhou)

Chen Dasheng 陈达生, Chen Enming 陈恩明 and Fujian sheng Quanzhou

haiwai jiaotong shi bowuguan 福建省泉州海外交通史博物馆
Yinchuan, Fuzhou: Ningxia renmin chubanshe, Fujian renmin chubanshe,
1984.

This collection includes around 200 stele inscriptions dating from the Song and Yuan periods.

(C) CJ3504 .L53 2000x *Liang Song tieqian*
两宋铁钱
(Iron Coins during the Northern and Southern Song Dynasty)
Yan Fushan 阎福善
Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 2000. [9], 438 p.

Includes rubbings of 1861 types of iron coins. It covers the coins recovered in the large discovery made during a clean-up project along the Grand Canal in Gaoyou, Jiangsu, 1985. Each entry explains the coin's features and source. Entries are arranged by reign period. Pieces whose authenticity could not be guaranteed are not included. For those pieces on which opinion diverges as to their grades and features, all opinions are noted. Includes a general discussion of iron coins in the Song period, a chronology of major events relating to this topic, a chart of supervising government agencies by prefecture, a map of foundries and places where iron coin circulated.

IV. Historical Encyclopedias and Modern Chronologies

IV.A. HISTORICAL ENCYCLOPEDIAS AND DICTIONARIES

IV.A.1. Sung History

Of exceptional importance is the Sung volume of the projected thirteen-part *Great Dictionary of Chinese History*. Entries are arranged by stroke-count. The author of the entry is given at the end of each item. It includes short biographies, explanations of institutional terms, book titles, etc.

R2457/2325(5) *Chung-kuo li-shih ta-tz'u-tien: Sung shih*
Ref (C) DS733.C6242 1983x vol.5 中國歷史大辭典：宋史
LoC: DS734.7 .C596 1983 China (Great dictionary of Chinese history: Sung history).
Teng Kuang-ming 鄧廣銘 and Ch'eng Ying-liu 程應鏐 eds.
Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu, 1984. 71 and 543 p.

There are also volumes devoted to the preceding period and to the conquest dynasties.

Chung-kuo li-shih ta-tz'u-tien: Sui, T'ang, Wu-tai shih
中國歷史大辭典：隋唐五代史
(Great dictionary of Chinese history: Sui, T'ang, and Five Dynasties history).
Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu, forthcoming.

R2457/2325(6) *Chung-kuo li-shih ta-tz'u-tien: Liao, Hsia, Chin, Yuan shih*
Ref (C) DS733.C6242 1983x 中國歷史大辭典：遼夏金元史

(Great dictionary of Chinese history: Liao, Hsia, and Chin history).
Ts'ai Mei-piao 蔡美彪 ed.
Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu, 1986. 74 and 556 p.

For other works in this series see below.

For institutional terms, policies, and figures associated with the New Policies regime of Wang An-shih and his followers, see:

J4616/1131.2 *Ō Anseki jiten*
王安石事典
(Encyclopedia of Wang An-shih).
Higashi Ichio 東一夫
Tokyo: Kokusho kankōkai, 1980. 342 p.

IV.A.2. General Encyclopedias of Chinese History

Both of the following note major Sung figures and events:

Ref (W) DS705.C35 1991 *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of China*
LoC: DS705 .C35 1991 Brian Hook ed.
Cambridge and New York: Cambridge University Press, 2nd ed.,
1991. 502p.

and

(W) Ref DS31.E53 1987 *The Encyclopedia of Asian History*
LoC: DS31 .E53 1988 Ainsley T. Embree editor-in-chief.
Robin J. Lewis, executive editor.
New York: Charles Scribner and Sons, 1988. 4 volumes.

IV.A.3. Topical Encyclopedias and Dictionaries: All Periods of Chinese History

IV.A.3.a. Series

Each volume of the *Great Encyclopedia of China* treats a particular discipline, for example,

9302/5641(17:1-2) *Chung-kuo ta pai-k'o ch'üan-shu*
LoC: AE17 .C48 China 中國大百科全書
(Great encyclopedia of China).
Volume 17: "Chung-kuo wen-hsueh"
中國文學
(Chinese literature).
Peking and Shanghai: Chung-kuo ta pai-k'o ch'üan-shu ch'u-pan
she, 1986. 2 volumes,

covers major literary works, literary figures, and terms. Entries are in alphabetical order according to *p'in-yin* romanization. There is a stroke-count index and an alphabetically arranged subject index.

For history, see:

9302/5641 (45) *Chung-kuo ta-pai-k'o ch'üan-shu:*
LoC: AE17 .C48 China 中國大百科全書
(Great encyclopedia of China).
Volume 45: "Chung-kuo li-shih"
中國歷史
(Chinese history).
Peking and Shanghai: Chung-kuo ta-pai-k'o ch'üan-shu ch'u-pan-
she, 1992.

The front index is by category and then period. Individual items are arranged by *p'in-yin* romanization. A chronological table, a stroke-count index, and a topical index are appended. For the Sung period, check the category index, and then search for items listed under "Liao, Sung, Hsi Hsia, Chin".

Other volumes of the *Great Encyclopedia of China* covering Sung-period topics include:

LoC: AE17 .C48 China

R9302/5641(2)	"Hsi-ch'ü, ch'ü-i 戲曲曲藝 (Drama), 1983.
R9302/5641(4)	"Fa hsueh" 法學 (Legal studies), 1984.
R9302/5641(6)	"Chiao-yü" 教育 (Education), 1985.
R9302/5641(7)	"T'ien-wen hsueh" 天文學 (Astronomy), 1986.
R9302/5641(10)	"Fang-chih" 紡織 (Textiles), 1984.
R9302/5641(12)	"K'ao-ku hsueh" 考古學 (Archaeology), 1986.
R9302/5641(13)	"Min-tsu" 民族 (Nationalities), 1986.
R9302/5641(45)	"Li-shih" 歷史 (History), 1992.

In addition to the volumes noted above the following topical volumes of the *Great Dictionary of Chinese History* contain Sung-period material.

R2457/2325(12)	<i>Min-tsu shih</i> 民族史 (History of nationalities).
	<i>Li-shih ti-li</i> 歷史地理 (Historical geography).
	<i>Ssu-hsiang shih</i> 思想史 (Intellectual history). 38 and 475p.
	<i>Shih-hsueh shih</i> 史學史 (Historiography). 55 and 511 p.
	<i>K'o-chi shih</i> 科技史 (Science and technology).

IV.A.3.b. Encyclopedias of Literature

The following, an international collaborative effort, is the most extensive encyclopedia of Chinese literature in English.

(W) Ref PL2264.Z99 I53 1986x	<i>The Indiana Companion to Traditional Chinese Literature.</i>
LoC: Z3108.L5 I53 1986	William H. Nienhauser, Jr. ed. and comp. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1986. 1050 p.

The following authoritative Chinese encyclopedia of Chinese literature is arranged by stroke count. There is also a subject index and an alphabetical index.

R5209/7235 (1-8)	<i>Chung-kuo wen-hsueh tz'u-tien</i> 中國文學辭典 (Encyclopedia of Chinese literature). T'ien-chin: Jen-min ch'u-pan-she, 1991. 8 vols. 6427 p.
------------------	---

The following five-volume work covers in separate sections writers and literary groups, writings, literary styles, famous lines, etc.

5209/2173 (1-5)	<i>Chung-kuo ku-tai wen-hsueh tz'u-tien</i> 中國古代文學辭典 (Dictionary of Chinese ancient literature). Wang Li 王力 et al. Vol 1. Kuang-hsi jen-min, 1986. Vol II-IV. Kuang-hsi chiao-yü, 1989.
-----------------	--

The following one-volume work has 5700 entries on major writers, writings, literary schools, styles, allusions, famous lines, etc. It is arranged by stroke count; there is an alphabetical index to the entry headings.

5209/1829

Chung-kuo ku-tai wen-hsueh tz'u-tien
中國古代文學辭典

(Dictionary of Chinese ancient literature).

Chia Ch'uan-t'ang 賈傳棠 et al. comp.

Peking: Wen-hsin ch'u-pan-she, 1987. 83 and 975 p.

The *Dictionary of Chinese Traditional Fiction* covers different genres of fiction (*zhiguai* 志怪, *yishi* 佚史, *chuanqi* 傳奇 and other forms). It includes short title descriptions of extant vernacular and classical stories. It is divided into two sections on vernacular and classical stories. The first part listing vernacular stories is further subdivided into short and long stories. The classical stories are listed in chronological order.

Ref (C) PL2415.C578 1986

LoC: PL2416 .C53 1982 China

Zhongguo lidai xiaoshuo cidian

中國歷代小說辭典

(Dictionary of Chinese traditional fiction).

Volume 2: Song, Yuan, and Ming.

Hou Zhongyi 侯忠義

Kunming: Yunnan renmin chubanshe, 1993.

For *shih* poetry the following is useful. Most of the work is devoted to separate essays on 1253 poems by 253 Sung authors. The bibliographies, chronology, and indexes to titles and lines make this a reference work as well.

5214.5/7255

Song shi jianshang cidian

宋詩鑒賞辭典

(Guide to Song *shih* poetry).

Miao Yue 繆鉞

Shanghai: Shanghai cishu chubanshe, 1987. 1610 p.

The following is also important for *shih* poetry. Included are an index to the titles of the poems discussed; maps of the peregrinations of Su Shih, Huang T'ing-chien, Lu Yu, and Fan Ch'eng-ta; a list of Sung anthologies; an index to Sung literary collections; a listing of biographical sources, *shih-hua*, Japanese translations and modern Chinese annotated editions; a table of rhymes; and an account with charts of the bureaucratic system before and after 1082.

J5214.5/8644

Sō shi kanshō jiten

宋詩鑒賞辭典

[*Sung shih chien-shang tz'u-tien*](Guide to Sung *shih* poetry).

Maeno Naoaki 前野直彬

Tokyo: Tōkyōtō shuppan, 1977. 422 p.

This encyclopedia of T'ang and Sung *tz'u* is somewhat typical of the many literary encyclopedias that have appeared. A description of its contents follows.

(C) PL2336.T4 1990

LoC: PL2336 .T4 1990 China

T'ang Sung tz'u pai-k'o ta-tz'u-tien

唐宋詞百科大辭典

(Encyclopedia of T'ang and Sung *tz'u*).

Wang Hung 王洪 et al. comp.

Peking: Hsueh-yuan ch'u-pan-she, 1990. 167, 1482 p. Revised ed., 1997.

Detailed table of contents (167 p.) listing all items in each of the sixteen sections.

1. Terms (*yü-tz'u* 語詞): pp. 1-280. Ordered alphabetically.
2. Allusions (*tien-ku* 典故), pp. 281-551. Ordered alphabetically.
3. Domestic research, pp 552-634, covering researchers and scholarly studies, arranged chronologically, and academic debates.
4. Foreign research, pp. 635-733, covering general studies, studies of *tz'u* poets, methodology, and specialists.
5. Texts (*tien-chi* 典籍), pp. 734-813, listing individual collections and anthologies.
6. Criticism (*mei-hsueh* 美學), pp. 814-851, covering critics in chronological order, works of criticism in chronological order, and critical terminology.

7. Selected *tz'u* criticism (*tz'u-hua chi-chin* 詞話集錦), pp. 852-943. General comment on each poet and criticism of specific *tz'u*.
 8. Anecdotes (*tz'u-t'an i-shih* 詞壇軼事), pp. 944-964.
 9. Music (*yin-yueh* 音樂), pp. 965-1010. On the classifications of music, temperament, musical scores, styles and composition methods, and forms of performance.
 10. Religion (*tsung-chiao* 宗教), pp. 1011-1034. Religious figures and terms in *tz'u*.
 11. Customs (*min-su* 民俗), pp. 1035-1110. References to material culture in *tz'u*.
 12. Official titles, pp. 1111-1136.
 13. General knowledge, pp. 1137-1188. Common *tz'u* tunes titles.
 14. T'ang and Sung *tz'u* poets (*T'ang-Sung tz'u-jen* 唐宋詞人), pp. 1189-1233. Biographies.
 15. Analyses of some entire *tz'u* (*tz'u-tso p'ing-tien* 詞作評點), pp. 1234-1324.
- Detailed analyses of famous lines (*ming-chü ching-hsi* 名句精析), pp. 1325-1342.

There is also a series of indexes: to prefaces and postscripts of T'ang-Sung *tz'u* collections, to books of essays on *tz'u* and tools for studying *tz'u* published on the mainland, and to articles in Chinese about T'ang-Sung *tz'u* studies. A select bibliography of foreign studies is appended. There is a stroke-count index to topic headings in sections 1-6 and 9-14.

The following has essays on 700 *tz'u* poems by 213 authors, a chronology, bibliographies, indexes, and a full set of *tz'u* patterns.

5577/4809

Sung tz'u chien-shang tz'u-tien

宋詞鑒賞辭典

(Guide to Sung *tz'u* poetry).

Ho Hsin-hui 賀新輝 ed.

Peking: Pei-ching Yen-shan ch'u-pan-she, 1987. 1394 p.

Of similar scope is the following, in fifteen sections:

LoC: PL2343 .S87 1990 China

Sung tz'u ta tz'u-tien

宋詞大辭典

(Great dictionary of Sung *tz'u*).

Chang Kao-k'uan 張高寬 et al.

N. p.: Liao-ning jen-min ch'u-pan-she, 1990. 1131 p.

Song ci jianshang cidian

宋詞鑒賞辭典

(Great dictionary of Song ci)

Xia Chengtao 夏承焘

Shanghai: Shanghai cishu chubanshe, 2003.

Song ci da cidian

宋詞大辭典

(Great dictionary of Song ci)

Wang Zhaopeng 王兆鵬, Liu Zunming 劉尊明

Nanjing: Fenghuang chubanshe, 2003.

IV.A.3.c. Other Encyclopedias

For **philosophy**, see:

Ref (C) B5232.C46 1985

Che-hsueh ta-tz'u-tien: Chung-kuo che-hsueh-shih chüan

哲學大辭典：中國哲學史卷

(Great dictionary of philosophy: history of Chinese philosophy volume).

Yen Pei-ming 嚴北溟 et al. comp.

Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu, 1985. 821 p.

3475 entries on figures, writings, terms, philosophical schools, etc. There is an alphabetical index and a subject index to the entry headings. A classified bibliography of major books in Chinese since 1949 is included.

For brief explanations of Chinese **Neo-Confucian** thinkers, works and terminology consult:

(C) B127.N4 C55 1995 *Zhongguo lixue da cidian*
 中国理学大辞典
 (Great dictionary of Neo-Confucianism in China).
 Dong Yuzheng 董玉整, ed.
 [Guangdong] : Ji nan da xue chu ban she, 1995. 692 p.

B126 .E496 2003 *Encyclopedia of Chinese philosophy*
 A. S. Cua, ed.
 New York: Routledge, 2003. xx, 1020 p.

For **Ch'an Buddhism**, see:

Ref (J) BQ9259.Z45 *Zengaku daijiten*
 LoC: BQ9259 .Z45 禪學大辭典
 (Great dictionary of Ch'an Buddhism).
 Komazawa daigaku nai Zengaku daijiten hensanjo
 駒澤大學內禪學大辭典編纂所
 Tokyo: Daishūkan shoten, 1978. 3 vols.

 New ed.: *Shinpan Zengaku daijiten*
 新版禪學大辭典
 Zengaku daijiten hensanjo 禪學大辭典編纂所
 Tokyo: Daishūkan shoten, 1985.

IV.B. CHRONOLOGIES

IV.B.1. Political Chronologies

The "Basic Annals" of the *Sung History* have been translated into Japanese as:

Sōdaishi nenpyō
 宋代史年表
 (Chronological tables of the Sung dynasty).
 Aoyama Sadao 青山定雄 and the Sōshi teiyō hensan kyōryoku
 iinkai
 宋史提要編纂協力委員會

Ref (J) DS751.S63 1967x v.1 Volume 1, *Hoku-Sō* 北宋 (Northern Sung).
 Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1967. 201 and 16 p.

Ref (J) DS751.S63 1967x v.2 Volume 2, *Nan-Sō* 南宋 (Southern Sung).
 Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1974. 276 and 17 p.

Year-by-year tables of important political events and civil and military appointments, with a second table noting significant cultural events. Generally one page for each year. Corresponding year dates for Korea, Liao, Hsi-hsia, Chin, and Yuan are noted. A chronology of astrological portents and natural disasters is appended. This partly supersedes:

Chronique de la dynastie des Sung (960-1279).
 Christian Cochini and Anna Seidel trans.
 Munich: Universität München, Ostasiatisches Seminar, 1968. 257 p,

which translates and indexes the section on Sung in the

Ref (C) DS733.C645 1962x *Chung-wai li-shih nien-piao*

LoC: DS733 .C5843 China

中外歷史年表
(Chronological tables of Chinese and foreign history).
Chien Po-tsan 翦伯贊 et al. comp.
Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1961. 883 p.

Events from Sung history, as found in

Ref (C) DS733.F38 1985
LoC: DS733 .F38 1985 China

Chung-kuo li-shih ta-shih nien-piao
中國歷史大事年表
(Chronological tables of major events in Chinese history).
Feng Chün-shih 馮君實 ed.
N.p: Liao-ning jen-min ch'u-pan she, 1985. 521 p,

have been supplemented with biographical information (including date of figure's death), further details on foreign relations, and brief descriptions of major domestic policy initiatives during the Sung, Five Dynasties, Liao, Chin, and Hsia and published separately as:

2512/5675

Chung-kuo li-shih ta-shih pien-nien: Wu-tai, Shih-kuo, Sung, Liao, Hsia, Chin
中國歷史大事編年：五代十國宋遼夏金
(Chronology of major events in Chinese history: Five Dynasties, Ten Kingdoms, Sung, Liao, Hsia, and Chin).
Peking: Pei-ching ch'u-pan, 1987. 695 p.

Bei Song wangchao dashi nianbiao (960-1127); Nan Song wangchao dashi nianbiao (1127-1279)
北宋王朝大事系年表(公元960-1127年); 南宋王朝大事系年表(公元1127-1279年)
(Chronology of Main Events during the Northern Song Dynasty (960-1127); Chronology of Main Events during the Southern Song Dynasty (1127-1279))
Liu Kuntai 劉坤太
<http://www.songdai.com/shownews.asp?NewsID=134>
<http://www.songdai.com/shownews.asp?NewsID=135>

Of note is the first chronological index to the *Sung hui-yao*. This lists the dates for all the documents in the *Sung hui-yao* in chronological order, thus creating a guide to the most complete chronological history of the Sung period. This work may also appear as a computer database.

Sō kaiyō shūkō hennen sakuin
宋會要輯稿編年索引
(Chronological Index to Collected Statutes of the Song Dynasty Reconstructed)
Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 comp.
Kyōto: Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1995.

IV.B.2. Reign Dates

For a chronology of Sung reigns and a discussion of reign names, see:

(W) DS751.S83
LoC: DS751 .S83

"A Chronology of the Reigns and Reign Names of the Song Dynasty."
James M. Hargett.
Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies 19 (1987): 26-34.

IV.B.3. Other Chronologies

For publishing:

a)

Z462.3.L537 2004x

Zhongguo chuban biannian shi
 中国出版编年史
 (A Chronology of Chinese Publishing)
 Li Ruiliang 李瑞良
 Fuzhou: Fujian renmin chubanshe, 2004.

This title includes an extensive chronology of Song publishing (pp. 239-371).

b)

Z462.3.L537 2004x

Zhongguo shu wenhua yaolan. Gudai bufen
 中国书文化要览. 古代部份
 (Essentials of Chinese Book Culture. The Pre-Modern Part)
 Shi Jinyan 施金炎
 Changsha: Hunan jiaoyu chubanshe, 1992.

This chronology of major events in publishing covers the Song period in detail (pp. 120-203) and includes subject, name and title indexes.

For intellectual culture, see:

R1022/4225

LoC: B126 .M33 (Orien China)

Sung Yuan li-hsueh chia chu-shu sheng-tsu nien-piao
 Ref (C) B127.N4 M34 宋元理學家著書生卒年表
 1968x (Chronology of the writings and dates of birth and death of
 Sung and Yuan Neo-Confucians).
 Mai Chung-kuei 麥仲貴
 Hong Kong: Chinese University, 1968. 443, 20 p.

In addition to Neo-Confucians, this work notes important literary figures, classicists, historians, and so on, as well as events in intellectual and cultural history. Also for Sung Confucianism, or "Sung Learning," note the three sets of time-lines for important figures during Northern Sung, Southern Sung, and Chu Hsi's lifetime appended to:

BJ1042/8531

Sōgaku kenkyū bunken mokuroku
 宋學研究文獻目錄
 (Bibliography of research on Sung Confucianism).
 Imai Usaburō 今井宇三郎
 Tokyo: Tōkyō kyōiku daigaku Kanbungaku kenkyūshitsu, 1959. 25
 p.

The following work lists the dates of major Song Neo-Confucian scholars and the publication dates for their work. It also includes major events in the history of Confucian scholarship.

Song Yuan Ming Qing ruxue nianbiao
 宋元明清儒學年表
 (A Chronology of Song, Yuan and Ming Confucianism)
 Imazeki Tenpō 今関壽磨(天彭)
 Tōkyō, 1919. Rpt. Beijing: Beijing tushuguan chubanshe, 2002.

For chronologies centered on *shih* and *tz'u* poetry respectively, see:

5214.5/7255

Sung shih chien-shang tz'u-tien
 宋時鑒賞辭典
 (Guide to Sung *shih* poetry).
 Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu ch'u-pan-she, 1987, pp. 1487-1532.

5577/4089

Sung tz'u chien-shang tz'u-tien

宋詞鑒賞辭典
 (Guide to Sung *tz'u* poetry).
 Ho Hsin-hui 賀新輝 ed.
 Peking: Pei-ching Yen-shan ch'u-pan-she, 1987, pp. 1211-1255.

For foreign relations, see:

LoC: DS740.4 .H297 1983 *Tribute Missions to China, 960-1126.*
 Robert Hartwell.
 Philadelphia: by the author, 1983. 215 p.

Organized by state; notes duration of mission, envoys, purpose, and sequence of events. The section on Japan was still in progress when the 1983 edition appeared.

Diplomacy and Trade in the Chinese World 589-1276
 Hans Bielenstein
 Leiden: Brill, 2005.

Offers detailed descriptions of tribute missions and goods traded during such missions between Sui and Song times. Organized chronologically by state.

For a general chronology covering politics, science and technology as well as economics and everyday life, see

DS33 .C63 2000X *Columbia Chronologies of Asian History and Culture*
 John Stewart Bowman
 New York: Columbia University Press, 2000. xvi, 751 p.

The relevant passages are on pp. 28-36, 105-107.

V. Biographical Dictionaries and Indexes to Biographical Information

V.A. BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARIES

Biographies of Sung figures will be found in historical encyclopedias listed in Section IV. There is one biographical dictionary for the Sung period:

Ref(W) DS751.5.S96 *Sung Biographies.*
 LoC: DS751.5 .S96 Herbert Franke, ed.
 Wiesbaden: Steiner, 1976.
 4 volumes.

Vols. 1-3 contain 406 biographies, prepared by various scholars; Vol. 4 contains 35 biographies of painters. There is no index; there is a table of contents. Biographies are in alphabetical order.

For Song authors, see:

Zhongguo wenxuejia da cidian: Songdai
 中国文学家大辞典. 宋代
 (Big Dictionary of Chinese Writers: The Song Dynasty)
 Zeng Zaozhuang 曾枣庄, Li Wenze 李文泽, Wu Hongze 吴洪泽
 Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 2004.

For painters see, in addition to Volume 4 of *Sung Biographies*:

R6104/2982Ref
 (C) ND1048.C4
 LoC: ND1048 .C4 (Orien China)

T'ang Sung hua-chia jen-ming tz'u-tien
 唐宋畫家人名辭典
 (Personal-name dictionary of T'ang and Sung painters).
 Chu Chu-yü 朱鑄禹
 Peking: Chung-kuo ku-tien i-shu ch'u-pan-she, 1958. 29 and 491p

as well as

6105/7904
 LoC: ND1048 .S84 1984 China

Sung Liao Chin hua-chia shih-liao
 宋遼金畫家史料
 (Historical materials on Sung, Liao, and Chin painters).
 Ch'en Kao-hua 陳高華
 Peking: Wen-wu ch'u-pan she, 1983. 13 and 853 p.

For painters note also:

Ref (W) ND1043.3.C3
 LoC: ND1043.3 .C3

An Index of Early Chinese Painters and Paintings: T'ang, Sung, Yuan.
 James Cahill, with Osvald Sirén and Ellen Johnston Laing.
 Berkeley: University of California Press, 1980. 391 p.

Specifically for the **Ch'an Buddhists**, see

Ref (J) BQ9259.Z45
 LoC: BQ9259 .Z45

Zengaku daijiten.
 禪學大辭典
 (Great dictionary of Ch'an Buddhism).
 Komazawa daigaku nai Zengaku daijiten hensanjo
 駒澤大學內禪學大辭典編纂所 comp.
 Tokyo: Daishūkan shoten, 1978. 3 volumes.

New ed.: *Shinpan Zengaku daijiten*
 新版禪學大辭典
 Zengaku daijiten hensanjo 禪學大辭典編纂所
 Tokyo: Daishūkan shoten, 1985.

Biographies will also be found in various historical encyclopedias, in particular the *Sung shih* volume of the *Chung-kuo li-shih ta tz'u-tien*, the *Ajia rekishi daijiten*, and in the work immediately below.

V.B. INDEXES TO COMPREHENSIVE BIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION

Various Sung-period biographical collections, later sources with biographies of Sung figures, and various forms of biographical information found in Sung literary collections are indexed by the following work, the most comprehensive and detailed index to documents with biographical information. Entries include brief accounts of the individual's career and reputation.

R2259.5/3820
Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin

LoC: DS751.5 .S97 (Orien China) 宋人傳記資料索引
 (Index to biographical materials on Sung figures).
 Ch'ang Pi-te 昌彼得, Wang Te-i 王德毅, Ch'eng Yuan-min 程元敏,
 and Hou Chün-te 侯俊德 comp.
 Taipei: Ting-wen, 1974-1976. 6 volumes.
 McMullen #281.

Note that there is a digital version of this edition included in Scripta Sinica (see [VI.F](#)). It can be browsed and searched full-text.

Emendations to the *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin* have also been published:

2451/8297.1 "Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin pu-cheng".
 LoC: HN671.S534 Orien China 宋人傳記資料索引補正
 (Supplement to the Index of biographical materials on Sung
 figures).
 P'an Po-ch'eng 潘柏澄
Shih-huo yueh-k'an 食貨月刊 4.6 (1974): 254-263.

The *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin* is arranged by stroke count. Volume 6 indexes the entire work according to *tzu* 字 names, *hao* 號 names, posthumous names, etc. It is particularly valuable for its references to the various "records," "prefaces," documents of appointment, and so on, in literary collections. However, neither letters nor poems, for example, are indexed.

Of great importance is the three-volume "Supplement" to the *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin*, prepared in conjunction with the *Ch'üan Sung wen* project:

LoC: DS751 .L47 1994 China *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin pu-pien*
 宋人傳記資料索引補編
 (Supplement to the Index to biographical materials on Sung
 figures).
 Li Kuo-ling 李國玲 comp.
 Ch'eng-tu: Ssu-ch'uan ta-hsuch, 1994.
 3 volumes.

This draws on material not included in the Taiwan index, including recently discovered tomb inscriptions and museum collections. There are more than 14,000 new name entries and supplements to over 6,000 established entries. The arrangement of the contents is similar to that in the Taiwan index. There is an index to secondary names.

Supplementary to the above two reference works are the following two sets of indexes:

Ref (C) DS751.5 .S66 1997x *Zhongguo difangzhi Songdai renwu ziliao suoyin*
 中國地方志宋代人物資料索引
 (Index to Song Dynasty Biographical Materials in Chinese Local
 Gazetteers)
 Shen Zhihong 沈治宏 and Wang Ronggui 王蓉貴, comps.
 Chengdu: Sichuan cishu chubanshe, 1997
 4 vols.

Ref (C) DS751.5 S66 2002x *Zhongguo difangzhi Songdai renwu ziliao suoyin xu bian*
 中國地方志宋代人物資料索引續編
 (Index to Song Dynasty Biographical Materials in Chinese Local
 Gazetteers--Continued)
 Shen Zhihong 沈治宏 and Wang Ronggui 王蓉貴, comps.
 Chengdu: Sichuan cishu chubanshe, 2002
 4 vols.

The first name index is based on 302 local gazetteers in four gazetteer collections: 1) *Song Yuan fangzhi congkan* 宋元方志丛刊 (41 titles); 2) *Tianyige cang Mingdai fangzhi xuankan* 天一閣藏明代方志選刊 (107 titles); 3) *Tianyige cang Mingdai fangzhi xuankan xubian* 天一閣藏明代方志選刊續編 (109 titles); 4) *Riben cang Zhongguo hanjian difangzhi congkan* 日本藏中国罕见地方志丛刊 (45 titles)). The names were drawn from not only the biography sections but a wide variety of chapters. The entries are arranged according to the four-corner classification system. Appendices include pinyin and stroke order indexes, as well as an index of alternate names of the subjects included in the main body of the index.

The sequel covers Song personal names in 19 provincial gazetteers in three other gazetteer collections: 1) *Zhongguo shengzhi huibian* 中國省志彙編 (16 titles); 2) *Zhongguo bianjiang congshu* 中國邊疆叢書 (2 titles); 3) *Changbai congshu chuji* 長白叢書-初集 (1). This title's layout and editorial policies are identical to the first installment.

The above works supersede:

<p>R2259.5/6240(C) Z3101.Y446x vol.34 LoC: Z5305.C5 H36 1959 (Orient China)</p>	<p><i>Ssu-shih-ch'i-chung Sung-tai chuan-chi tsung-ho yin-te</i> 四十七種宋代傳記綜合引得 (Combined indices to forty-seven collections of Sung-dynasty biographies) William Hung et al. Harvard-Yenching Institute Sinological Index Series, #34. Peking: Harvard-Yenching Institute, 1938; rpt. Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1959. 24 and 199 p. McMullen #208.</p>
---	--

Reprints: Taipei: Chengwen Publishing Co., 1959, 1972; Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1986; Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1959, 1987. Also circulating as *Songdai zhuanji ziliao congkan* 宋代傳記資料叢刊 (Beijing: Beijing tushuguan chubanshe, 2006).

The *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin* does not entirely supersede the following:

<p>RJ2259.5/3551 LoC: DS734 .S6 (Orient Japan)</p>	<p><i>Sōjin denki sakuin</i> 宋人傳記索引 (Index to biographies of Sung figures). Sōshi teiyō hensan kyōryoku iinkai 宋史提要編纂協力委員會 Tokyo: Tōyōbunko, 1968. 274 and 7 p. McMullen #209.</p>
--	--

which gives, on a single line, name, *tzu*, native place, the title of the Sung-period biographical document (usually a funerary inscription), its location, and three generations in the patriline (this last is not found in the larger index). Note further that the *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin* indexes biographies in Sung and Yuan local gazetteers, as does the

<p>Ref (C) DS735.C5266 LoC: DS735 .C5266 (Orient China)</p>	<p><i>Sung-Yuan fang-chih chuan-chi so-yin</i>. 宋元方志傳記索引 (Index to biographies in Sung and Yuan local gazetteers). Chu Shih-chia 朱士嘉 comp. Peking: Chung-hua shu-chū, 1963. 9 and 192 p.</p>
---	--

but does not index Ming- and Ch'ing-period gazetteers, many of which include information from lost Sung-period works. The *Ssu-ch'uan ta-hsueh* index does do this.

Missing from the *Sung-jen* index also are references to funerary biographical inscriptions for **monks**. In

addition to the supplements mentioned above researchers at Sichuan University published an index to biographical information on Song monks.

Song seng lu
宋僧录
(A Record of Song Monks)
Li Guoling 李国玲
Beijing: Xianzhuang shuju, 2001
2 vols. 1278 p.

This is a biographical index of over 6100 Song monks, indexed by Buddhist names. The compiler culled information from Buddhist texts as well as collected writings by Song and Yuan Dynasty authors, historical materials, local gazetteers, and biji.

The layout is similar to Chang Bide's index and its supplements. The main index is arranged by the four corners system. There is a name index by stroke order, and there are also indices for variant names.

For an earlier list of biographical inscriptions in the Buddhist canon, see:

J1880.7/1523 *Sōdai Zenshūshi no kenkyū*
LoC: BQ9412.9.C6 184 1987 Japan 宋代禪宗史の研究
(Studies of the history of the Ch'an sect in the Sung period).
Ishii Shūdō 石井修道
Tokyo: Daitō shuppansha, 1987, pp. 555-562.

Ref (C) CS2990 .S66 2001x *Song ren hangdi kao lu*
宋人行第考錄
(Record of Numerical Lineage Names for Song Dynasty Persons)
Deng Zimian 鄧子勉
Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 2001. [1], 14, 602 p.

This title indexes personal names based on numerical designations indicating a person's position in his or her lineage. The entry, giving the last name and numerical name, lists the person's main name, zi and hao, as well as a reference to the source in which the numerical name appears. There is an index of names, including the numerical names, zi and hao. This work is based on a very extensive corpus of texts (including wenji, biji, the two Song examination graduates lists, inscriptions, historical sources, poetry collections, leishu and fangzhi).

For bibliographical information on tomb inscriptions, see Dieter Kuhn and Helga Stahl's *Annotated Bibliography to the Shike shiliao xinbianin* III.C. In addition note the listing of recently unearthed funerary biographies:

Ref (C) PN6297.C45 J86 1993 *1949-1989 Ssu-shi nien ch'u-t'u mu-chih mu-lu*
LoC: PN6297.C45 J86 1993 China 1949—1989 四十年出土墓志目錄
(Catalogue of funerary biographies unearthed 1949-89).
Jung Li-hua 榮麗華 comp. Wang Shih-min 王世民 ed.
Peking: Chung-hua, 1993. 548 p.
(Sung figures are in items #587-845)

This also indexes places of publication, authors of inscriptions, and subjects.

Finally, a great deal of biographical information can be garnered from the personal-name indexes listed in Section VI below.

There are indexes to biographical materials for the periods before and after Sung:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Ref (C) Z3108.A3 F8 1982
LoC: Z3108.A3 F8 1982 China</p> | <p><i>T'ang Wu-tai jen-wu chuan-chi tzu-liao tsung-ho so-yin</i>
唐五代人物傳記資料綜合索引
(Comprehensive index to biographical materials on T'ang and Five Dynasties figures).
Fu Hsuan-tsung 傅璇琮 comp.
Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1982. 731 p.</p> |
| <p>Ref (C and J) DS751.76.U44 1972x
LoC: DS734 .U46 (Orien Japan)</p> | <p><i>Ryō Kin Genjin denki sakuin</i>
遼金元人傳記索引
(Index to biographies of Liao, Chin, and Yuan figures).
Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 comp.
Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1972. 219, 103, 24 p.</p> |
| <p>R2259.6/1120(1-5)
LoC: Z3108.A3 W37 China</p> | <p><i>Yuan-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin</i>
元人傳記資料索引
(Index to biographical materials on Yuan figures).
Wang Te-i 王德毅, Li Jung-ts'un 李榮村, and P'an Po-ch'eng 潘柏澄 comp.
Taipei: Hsin-wen-feng ch'u-pan-she, 1979-1982.</p> |

V.C. DATES OF SUNG FIGURES

Birth and death dates are included in the *Sung-jen* index discussed above. For the dates alone the most handy reference is:

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <p>(W) Ref DS734.W38</p> | <p><i>Répertoire des dates des hommes célèbres des Song.</i>
Weng T'ung-wen.
Paris: École Pratique des Hautes Études, 1962. 192 p.</p> |
|--------------------------|--|

This includes examination degree dates. Names are in the French romanization system (there is a character index); Chinese characters are included.

Corrections have been made to Weng's work in

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>(W) DS751.S83
LoC: DS751 .S83</p> | <p>"The Dates of Eminent Persons in Sung."
Yi-lo Ma.
<i>Sung Studies Newsletter</i> 11-12 (1975-76): 23-49,</p> |
|--|---|

which corrects dates for 255 individuals, including 106 not in the Weng list, based on

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>9200/2470.1
LoC: DS701 .Y86</p> | <p>"Sung-jen sheng-tsu k'ao shih-li"
宋人生卒考示例
(Verifications of dates for Sung figures).
Cheng Ch'ien 鄭騫
<i>Yu-shih hsueh-chih</i> 幼獅學誌 6.1 (1967), 6.2 (1967), 7.4 (1968),
and 10.3 (1972): 1-12.</p> |
|--|---|

Cheng Ch'ien's study is available in a single volume:

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| <p>2259.9/8232</p> | <p><i>Sung-jen sheng-tsu k'ao shih-li</i></p> |
|--------------------|---|

LoC: DS751 .C455

宋人生卒考示例
(Verifications of dates for Sung figures).
Cheng Ch'ien 鄭騫
Taipei: Hua-shih ch'u-pan-she, 1977. 162p.

V.D. Personal-Name Indexes

Here are included works which index personal names exclusively. For indexes that cover personal names in addition to other kinds of terms see Section VI above, Comprehensive Indexes.

V.D.1. PERSONAL-NAME INDEXES TO HISTORICAL WORKS

All personal names appearing in the *Sung History* are indexed according to the four corner system in

Ref (C) DS751.Y86 1992x
LoC: DS751.5 .Y8 1992 China

Sung shih jen-ming so-yin
宋史人名索引
(Personal-name index to the *Sung history*).
Yü Ju-yun 俞如雲 ed.
Shanghai: Shang-hai ku-chi ch'u-pan-she, 1992. 4 vol. 2404 p.

It may still be useful to consult indexes devoted to particular sections of the *Sung History*. Consult the Saeki indexes noted in Section VI for the various treatises. For the "Basic Annals," see:

Ref (W) DS751.43Z6 1966x
LoC: DS748.5 .M4

Index des noms propres dans les annales principales de l'Histoire des Song.
Ching-ying Lee Mei comp.
Paris: Presses Univ. de France, 1966. 130 p.
McMullen #63.

Biographies in the important supplement to the Southern Sung portions of the *Sung History*, Lu Hsin-yuan's 陸心源 *Sung shih i*, are indexed by the *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin*. The following indexes personal names that appear in those biographies. Arranged according to the four-corner system; with a stroke-count index.

2665 7133b

"*Sung shih i jen-ming so-yin*"
宋史翼人名索引
(Personal name index to the *Supplement to the Sung history*)
Tseng I-fen 曾貽芬 comp.
In *Sung shih i* 宋史翼
Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1991, pp. 1-143.

The *Sung hui-yao*, an extensive collection of Sung memorials and edicts recovered from the *Yung-le ta-tien* 永樂大典, is arranged in chronological order within institutional categories. It includes documents from **960 to 1220**. A detailed table of contents is available separately (see Section XII below). The following personal-name index, arranged by stroke count, is based on the Hsin-wen-feng reprint; for the Shih-chieh shu-chü reprint add 14 to the page number given in the index.

4684/381
LoC: DS751.H732 W36

Sung hui-yao chi-kao jen-ming so-yin
宋會要輯稿人名索引
(Index of personal names in the *Sung hui-yao chi-kao*).
Wang Te-i 王德毅 comp.
Taipei: Hsin-wen-feng, 1978. 990 p.

There is also an index to the section on economic matters in the *Sung hui-yao* that includes personal names.

J4353/3810 *Sō kaiyō shūkō shokka sakuin, jinmei shomei-hen*
 宋會要輯稿食貨索引人名書名篇
 (Index to *Sung hui-yao chi-kao shih-huo*: names of persons and books).
 Sōshi teiyōhensan kyōryoku iinkai
 宋史提要編纂協力委員會 cmp.
 Tokyo: Tōyōbunko, 1982. 150 p.

An index to names appearing in the chronological listings of chief and assisting councillors, Hsu Tzu-ming's 徐自明 *Sung tsai-fu pien-nien lu* 宋宰輔編年錄 and Lü Pang-yao's 呂邦耀 *Hsu Sung tsai-fu pien-nien lu* 續宋宰輔編年錄, is appended to the punctuated, critical edition:

4695.5/2926.1 "Sung tsai-fu pien-nien lu chiao-pu, jen-ming so-yin
 LoC: DS751.H743 W36 1986 China 宋宰輔編年錄 校補·人名索引
 (Personal-name index to *Sung tsai-fu pien-nien lu chiao-pu*).
 Wang Jui-lai 王瑞來
 In *Sung tsai-fu pien-nien lu chiao-pu*
 宋宰輔編年錄 校補
 Peking: Chung-hua shu-chū, 1986. Vol. 4, 28 p.

The chronological histories written in Sung cover the period 960-1163. For personal names in Li T'ao's 李燾 (1115-1184) 520-*chüan* chronicle of Northern Sung (960-1126), the *Long Draft of the Continuation of the Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Government*, see:

J2665/4444 *Zoku Shiji tsugan chōhen jinmei sakuin*
 LoC: DS751.U43 續資治通鑑長編人名索引
 [*hsu Tsu-chih t'ung-chien ch'ang-pien jen-ming so-yin*]
 (Personal-name index to the *Hsu Tzu-chih t'ung-chien ch'ang-pien*
 Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 comp.
 Kyoto: Dōhōsha, 1978. 697 p.

Hsu Meng-hsin's 徐夢莘(1124-1205) *Collection of Treaties with the North during Three Reigns (San-ch'ao pei-meng hui-pien)*, in 250 *chüan*, covers the period 1117-1161 and focuses on the fall of Northern Sung and relations with the Chin dynasty. There is a name index in:

J4301/1203.1 "Sanchō hokumei kaipen jinmei sakuin"
 LoC: HB9 .H57 三朝北盟會編人名索引
 [*San-ch'ao pei-meng hui-pien jen-ming so-yin*]
 (Personal-name index to the *San-ch'ao pei-meng hui-pien*).
 Aso Mikio 安蘇幹夫 comp.
Hiroshima daigaku keizai ronsō 廣島大學經濟論叢
 1.4 (1979): 55-83, for juan 1-40;
 2.1-2-3 (1979): 55-88, for juan 41-100
 4.2 (1981): 23-49, for juan 101-150
 11.1 (1988): 147-168, for juan 151-200
 11.4 (1989): 143-163, for juan 201-250 part 1
 12.1 (1989): 129-148, for juan 201-250 part 2

For Li Hsin-ch'uan's 李心傳(1166-1243) *Record of Important Events in Chronological Order since the Chien-yen Reign Period (Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu)*, in 200 *chüan*, covering the period 1126-1163, with attention to both foreign relations and domestic appointments and policy, see:

J2676/4432 *Ken'en irai kinen yōroku jinmei sakuin*

建炎以來繫年要錄人名索引
 [*Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu jen-ming so-yin*]
 (Personal-name index to the *Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu*).
 Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 comp.
 Kyoto: Dōhōsha, 1983. 663 p.

Another index to this text is included with the reproduction of the *Ssu-k'u ch'üan-shu* edition.

(C) DS751.L5 1992x
 "Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu jen-ming so-yin"
 建炎以來繫年要錄人名索引
 (Personal-name index to the *Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu*)
 P'ei Ju-ch'eng 裴汝誠 ed.
 In *Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu*.
 Shanghai: Shang-hai ku-chi, 1992.
 Vol. 4, pp. 17-508.

Recall the author indexes for various bibliographies of Sung texts cited in Section III above.

For authors' names in the *Li-tai ming-ch'en tsou-i*, not exclusive to Sung, see:

4664/4244
 LoC: DS703 .L5 1964 (Orien China)
 "*Li-tai ming-ch'en tsou-i tso-che so-yin*"
 歷代名臣奏議作者索引
 (Index to the authors in the *Li-tai ming-ch'en tsou-i*).
 Chang Hsi-ch'ing 張希清 et al. comp.
 In *Li-tai ming-ch'en tsou-i*
 Shanghai: Shang-hai ku-chi ch'u-pan-she, 1989. Vol. 5. 174p.

Appended to the *Li-tai ming-ch'en tsou-i*. Arranged by the four-corner system.

V.D.2. PERSONAL-NAME INDEXES TO OTHER WORKS

For personal names mentioned in the memorials of **Ssu-ma Kuang** (1019-1086), see:

4662.5/1791
 LoC: DS751.6.S78 A25 1986 China
 "*Ssu-ma Kuang tsou-i jen-ming so-yin*"
 司馬光奏議人名索引
 (Personal-name index to the *Memorials of Ssu-ma Kuang*).
 Wang Ken-lin 王根琳 comp.
 In *Ssu-ma Kuang tsou-i* 司馬光奏議(Memorials of Ssu-ma Kuang).
 T'ai-yuan: Shan-hsi jen-min ch'u-pan-she, 1986, pp. 447-474.

For personal names in the collected writings of **Chang Shih**(1122-1180), see:

J1234/0992
 LoC: PL2687.C359 N329
Chō Nanken shū jinmei sakuin
 張南軒集人名索引
 (Personal-name index to *Chang Nan-hsuan chi*).
 Takahata Tsunenobu 高常信 comp.
 Nagoya: Saika shorin, 1976. 128, 123 p.

For the literary collection (*Ssu-pu ts'ung-k'an* 四部叢刊 edition) of **Chu Hsi**朱熹 (1130-1200), see:

LoC: PL2679 .H829 1977
Kai'an sensei Shu Bunkō bunshū jinmei sakuin
 晦庵先生朱文公文集人名索引
 (Personal-name index to the *Literary Collection of Mr. Hui-an Chu Wen-kung* [*Hui-an hsien-sheng Chu Wen-kung wen-chi*]).
 Satō Hitoshi 佐藤仁 comp.

Kyoto: Chūbun shuppansha, 1977.

For personal names appearing in Wang Hsiang-chih's early-13th-century cultural geography, see the four-corner index appended to:

3025/1173b *Yü-ti chi-sheng*
輿地紀勝
(Records of famous places).
Wang Hsiang-chih 王象之 comp.
Peking: Chung-hua shu-chū, 1992. 8 volumes.

For personal names appearing in Chu Mu's 祝穆early 13th century cultural geography, see the four-corner index appended to:

"*Fang-yü sheng-lan jen-ming so-yin*"
方輿勝覽人名索引
(Personal-name index to the *Fang-yü sheng-lan*).
In *Sung-pen* 宋本*Fang-yü sheng-lan*.
Shanghai: Shanghai ku-chi, 1991. Vol. 4, pp. 1-258.

The following indexes personal names in eleven Sung **Ch'an-Buddhist miscellanies**.

J1801/7347 "Jūichi shu Sōdai Zenmon zuihitsushū jinmei sakuin"
十一種宋代禪門隨筆集人名索引
(Personal-name index to eleven Sung-period Ch'an-sect
miscellanies).
Ishii Shūdō 石井修道 comp.
Komazawa daigaku Bukkyōgakubu kenkyū kiyō
駒澤大學佛教學部研究紀要
42 (1984): 175-126; 43 (1985): 292-253.

Part I of the above work indexes monks' religious names, while Part II contains indexes for monks' other names, names of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas, names of secular figures, and titles of sutras and other writings.

There is a personal-name index for **Hung Mai's *I-chien chih*** appended to the 1981 punctuated edition. By four-corner system and stroke-count.

5745/3833.02 "I-chien chih jen-ming so-yin"
LoC: PL2687.H887 I2 1981 China 夷堅志人名索引
(Personal-name index to the *I-chien chih*).
Wang Hsiu-mei 王秀梅 comp.
In *I-chien chih*.
Peking: Chung-hua shu-chū, 1981. Vol. 4. 140 p.

References in the following indexes to personal names are also found in the *Sung-jen chuan-chi tzu-liao so-yin*.

(C) Z3101.Y446x vol.19 *Sung-shih chi-shih chu-che yin-te*
LoC: AI19.C5 Y55 vol. 19 (Orien 宋詩紀事著者引得
China) (Index to the authors in *Notes on Sung poetry* [*Sung-shih chi-shih*]).
Harvard-Yenching Institute Sinological Index Series, #19.
Peking, Harvard-Yenching Institute, 1938; rpt. Taipei: Chengwen
Publishing Co., 1966. 127 p.
McMullen #212.

1022/4838.5b *Sung Yuan hsueh-an jen-ming so-yin, fu i-ming so-yin*
宋元學案人名索引附異名索引

(Index to personal names in the *Records of Sung and Yuan learning* [*Sung Yuan hsueh-an*] with an appended index to alternative names).

Teng Yuan-ting 鄧元鼎 and Wang Mo-chün 王默君 comp.
Shanghai: Shang-wu, 1936. 156 p.
McMullen #214.

Ref (C) DS735.C5266
LoC: DS735 .C5266 (Orien China)

Sung Yuan fang-chih chuan-chi so-yin

宋元方志傳紀索引

(Index to biographies in Sung and Yuan local gazetteers).

Chu Shih-chia 朱士嘉 comp.

Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1963. 9 and 182 p.

McMullen #213.

The following is a detailed personal-name index to the *Sung Yuan hsueh-an* and its much longer continuation, the *Sung Yuan hsueh-an pu-i*. Arranged by Japanese pronunciation; there is a stroke-count index and an alternative-name index. It indexes both biographical entries and passing references.

J1022/4838

Sō Gen gakuan, Sō Gen gakuan hoi jinmei jigō betsumei sakuin

宋元學案、宋元學案補遺人名字號別名索引

[*Sung Yuan hsueh-an Sung Yuan hsueh-an pu-i, jen-ming, tzu-hao, pieh-ming so-yin*]

(Index to personal names, *tzu*, and other names in the *Records of Sung and Yuan Learning* and its continuation).

Kinugawa Tsuyoshi 衣川強 comp.

Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1974. 408 p.

Note also the following:

"*Sung Yuan hsueh-an li-mu jen-wu so-yin*"

宋元學案立目人物索引

(Index to the persons appearing in the section titles of *Sung-Yuan hsueh an*).

Chao Ch'i 兆奇 comp.

Sung-shih yen-chiu t'ung-hsun 宋史研究通訊 9 (1987): 15-55.

This indexes the *Ssu-pu pei-yao* edition of the *Sung-Yuan hsueh-an*. Names are ordered by the four-corner system.

For the names of **blockcarvers** of Sung and Yuan imprints, see:

9432/1130

R9432/1130

Ku-chi Sung Yuan k'an-kung hsing-ming so-yin

古籍宋元刊工姓名索引

(Index to the carvers' names in Sung Yuan editions).

Wang Chao-wen 王肇文 comp.

Shanghai: Shang-hai ku-chi ch'u-pan-she, 1990. 408 p.

For **Buddhist writings** see the fifth index in Part II of the following:

J1801/7347

"*Jūichi shu Sōdai Zenmon zuihitsushū jinmei sakuin*"

十一種宋代禪門隨筆集人名索引

(Personal-name index to eleven Sung-period Ch'an-sect miscellanies).

Ishii Shūdō 石井修道 comp.

Komazawa daigaku Bukkyōgakubu kenkyū kiyō

駒澤大學佛教學部研究紀要

42 (1984): 175-126; 43 (1985): 292-253

V.E. Biographical Series

(C) DS751.5

Song ren nianpu congkan

宋人年譜叢刊

(Chronological Biographies of Song Dynasty Persons)

Wu Hongze 吳洪澤 and Yin Bo 尹波, eds.

Chengdu: Sichuan daxue chubanshe, 2003. 12 vols.

This collection of chronological biographies (*nianpu*) includes 163 biographies of Song individuals published between Song times and the present. All are punctuated. For those individuals for whom multiple *nianpu* have been written, a limited number has been selected. The editors focused their selection on older and rare titles. The last volume (volume 12) includes an appendix with four indexes. The main name index indexes all names appearing in the full text and prefatory texts of the *nianpu* included in the collection. The main name index is arranged according to the four-corner system. For those unfamiliar with the four-corner system, shorter pinyin and stroke-order indexes for all last names follow. There is also a conversion table of Song dynasty years to the western calendar.

VI. Indexes and Concordances to Sung Texts

This section lists works that index more than one kind of term, for example, indexes that include personal names as well as place names and other terms. For indexes solely devoted to personal names see Section VII below, for place-name indexes see Section VIII, and so on. The listing that follows is arranged according to the nature and date of the text indexed.

VI.A. THE *SUNG SHIH*

The Zhonghua shuju edition of *The Song Dynastic History* can be browsed and searched in Academia Sinica's Chinese Electronic Texts. See [VI.F](#).

Saeki Tomi's 佐伯富 indexes to the treatises of the *Sung History* include technical and institutional terms. These are, for the bureaucracy:

J2404/5351(11)
2665/7171.2

Sōshi shokkanshi sakuin

宋史職官志索引

[*Sung-shih chih-kuan-chih so-yin*](Index to the **Treatise on bureaucracy** in the *Sung history*).

Saeki Tomi comp.

Kyōto: Kyōto daigaku bungakubu Tōyōshi kenkyūkai, 1963. 423 p.

Rpt. Kyōto: Dōhōsha, 1974.

McMullen #66.

Note the annotated translation:

J9165/5300(44)

Sōshi shokkashi yakuchū, I-VI

宋史食貨志譯注

(Annotated translation of the **Treatise on fiscal administration** of the *Sung history*).

Wada Sei 和田清 et al.
Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1960, 1999, 2002, 2004, 2005 (not seen).

and the accompanying index for general terminology:

Sōshi shokkashi yakuchū I-IV goi sakuin
宋史食貨志譯注I-IV 語彙索引
(Annotated Translation of the Treatise on Fiscal Policy in The History of the Song Dynasty I-IV: Index to Terminology)
Tōkyō: Tōyō bunko, 2003. 123 p.

"The Treatise on Recruitment" has been indexed and translated in:

J4666/7171

Sōshi senkyoshi sakuin
宋史選舉志索引
[*Sung-shih hsuan-chū chih so-yin*]
(Index to the **Treatise on recruitment** in the *Sung history*).
Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
Kyoto: Dōhōsha, 1982. 215 p.

Sōshi senkyoshi yakuchū
宋史選舉志譯註
(An Annotated Translation of "The Treatise on Recruitment" in *The Song Dynastic History*).
Nakajima Satoshi 中嶋敏
Tōkyō : Tōyō Bunko, 1992-2000.

For the legal system:

2665/7171.3
LoC: LAW <Japan LH418 Legal History>

Sung-shih hsing-fa chih so-yin
宋史刑法志索引
(Index to the **Treatise on penal law** in the *Sung history*).
Saeki Tomi comp.
Taipei: Hsueh-sheng shu-chū, 1977. 96 p.

and the annotated translation:

J9210/50740
LoC: DS701 .T64 Japan

"*Sōshi keihōshi yakushū kō*"
宋史刑法志譯注稿
["*Sung-shih hsing-fa chih i-chu kao*"]
(Draft translation of the Treatise on penal law in the *Sung History*).
Chūgoku kinsei no hōsei to shakai kenkyūhan comp.
中國近世の法制と社會研究班
Tōhō gakuho 64 (1992): 345-467, 65 (1993): 431-536.

For the military system:

Sung-shih ping-chih so-yin.
宋史兵志索引
(Index to the **Treatise on the military system** in the *Sung history*).
Saeki Tomi comp.
Taipei: Hua-shih ch'u pan-she, 1978.

For the rivers and canals:

J8731/2230
LoC: DS751 .T64 1979 Suppl.

Sōshi kakyoshi sakuin
宋史河渠志索引
[*Sung-shih ho-ch'ü-chih so-yin*]
(Index to the **Treatise on rivers and Canals** in the *Sung history*).
Saeki Tomi comp.
Tokyo: Shōshin shobō, 1979. 216 p.

There is also an annotated translation of the treatise:

J8731/5612

"*Sōshi kakyoshi yakuchū kō*"
宋史河渠志譯註稿
[*Sung-shih ho-ch'ü-chih i-chu kao* "]
(Annotated translation of the **Treatise on rivers and canals** in the *Sung History*).
Itō Toshio 伊藤敏雄 et al. tr.
Chūgoku suirishi kenkyū 中國水利史研究 11 (1981): 42-71, 14 (1984): 33-45, 15 (1985): 35-44, 18 (1988): 35-43, 19 (1989): 31-41, 20 (1990): 49-58.

For the treatise on fiscal administration:

Ref (C) Z3101.Y446x vol.32
LoC: AI19.C5 Y55 vol. 32 (Orient
China)

Shih-huo chih shih-wu chung tsung-ho yin-te
食貨志十五種綜合引得
(Combined index to the monographs on fiscal administration in fifteen standard histories).
William Hung
Harvard-Yenching Institute Sinological Index Series #32.
Peking: Harvard-Yenching Institute, 1938; rpt. Taipei: Ch'eng-wen Publishing Co., 1966. 441 p.
McMullen #40.

and the annotated edition:

4353/1116
LoC: HC427.6 .W35 1984 China

Li-tai shih-huo-chih chu-shih
歷代食貨志註譯
(Annotated treatises on fiscal administration through the ages).
Vol. 2. Five Dynasties and Sung.
Wang Lei-ming 王雷鳴 ed.
Peking: Nung-yeh ch'u-pan-she, 1985.

The above includes bibliographical references.

For "The Treatise on Geography" see [VII.B](#).

VI.B. OTHER HISTORICAL WORKS

The following is an index to the *Sung hui-yao*, the most extensive collection of Sung documents. This index, which may also appear as a computer database, lists the dates for all documents in chronological order.

Sō kaiyō shūkō hennen sakuin
宋會要輯稿編年索引
[*Song huiyao jigao biannian suoyin*]
(Chronological Index to Collected Statutes of the Song Dynasty Reconstructed).
Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 comp.
Kyōto: Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1995.

For a punctuated, edited and fully searchable edition of *Song huiyao*, consult:

Online (Proprietary; trial individual subscription by request)	<i>Song huiyao</i> 宋會要 (Collected Statutes of The Song Dynasty) Xu Song 徐松, Zhongyang yanjiuyuan 中央研究院, Sichuan daxue 四川大学, Harvard University Taibei: Zhongyang yanjiuyuan jisuan zhongxin, 2003.
--	--

Trial individual subscriptions can be requested through an application form available from the Society for Song, Yuan, and Conquest Dynasties Studies Website at <http://www.humanities.uci.edu/eastasian/SungYuan/SYRes.htm>

A series of indexes to the section on fiscal policy in the *Sung hui-yao* are planned. The first indexes bureaucratic and institutional titles and terms.

Sō kaiyō shūkō: shokka sakuin: shokkan hen
宋會要輯稿：食貨索引：職官編
[*Sung hui-yao chi-kao: shih-huo so-yin: chih-kuan pien*]
(Index to bureaucratic terms in the fiscal policy section of the *Sung hui-yao*)
Tōkyō: Tōyō bunko, 1995. 5, 328 p.

This index is organized alphabetically by Japanese pronunciation. There is a stroke-count index.

For general terminology:

Sō kaiyō shūkō shokka sakuin, ippan goi sakuin
宋會要輯稿食貨索引 一般語彙索引
(Index to general terminology in the fiscal policy section of *The Collected Statutes of the Song Dynasty*)
Tōkyō: Tōyō bunko, 2005 (not seen).

For other indexes to *Song huiyao*, see sections [V.D.1](#), [VI.C](#), [VII.D](#), and [X](#).

For Li T'ao's (1115-1184) chronological history of Northern Sung, the *Hsu Tzu-chih t'ung-chien ch'ang-pien*, see:

J2665/4444.1	<i>Zoku Shiji tsugan chōhen goi sakuin</i> 續資治通鑑長編語彙索引 (Vocabulary index to the <i>Hsu Tzu-chih t'ung-chien ch'ang-pien</i>). Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 comp. Kyōto: Dōhōsha, 1989.
--------------	--

This title is available full text through *Zhongyang yanjiuyuan Hanji dianzi wenxian* [AS] and *Guoxue baodian* [GXBD]. ([VI.F](#))
The name index to Li T'ao's work is noted in [Section V.D.1](#).

Umehara has also compiled a comprehensive vocabulary index to the *Ch'ing-yuan t'iao-fa shih-lei*, the most important compendium of administrative law.

Keigen jōhō jirui goi shūran
 慶元條法事類語彙輯覽
 [Ch'ing-yuan t'iao-fa shih-lei yü-hui chi-lan]
 (Collection of terms in the *Ch'ing-yuan t'iao-fa shih-lei*).
 Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 comp.
 Kyōto: Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1990. 652p.

Indexes the Seikado Library edition (rpt. Koten ken'yūkai, 1968) of the *Ch'ing-yuan t'iao-fa shih-lei* of 1203, a compendium of administrative law on a wide variety of topics. This edition in 36 *chüan* is about 45% of the lost original. All official titles and technical terms are indexed. Arranged by Japanese pronunciation; there is a stroke-count index. There are separate listings of the 敕, 令, 格 and 式 by topic and a chronological index to these documents.

The same author has compiled a comprehensive index, arranged by stroke count, to the series of five works on the **Northern Sung capital of K'ai-feng and the Southern Sung capital of Hang-chou**:

Meng Yuan-lao 孟元老	<i>Tung-ching meng-hua lu</i> 東京夢華錄 Also in AS and GXBD.
Wu Tzu-mu 吳自牧	<i>Meng-liang lu</i> 夢梁錄 Also in GXBD.
Nai Te-weng 耐得翁	<i>Tu-ch'eng chi-sheng</i> 都城紀勝
Anonymous	<i>Hsi-hu lao-jen fan-sheng lu</i> 西湖老人繁勝錄
Chou Mi 周密	<i>Wu-lin chiu-shih</i> 武林舊事 Also in GXBD.

Ref (J) DS751.U425 1979 LoC: DS751 .U425 1979	<i>Tōkei mukaroku Muryōroku tōgoi sakuin</i> 東京夢華錄夢梁錄等語彙索引 [<i>Tung-ching meng-hua lu Meng-liang lu teng yü-hui so-yin</i>] (Vocabulary index to <i>Tung-ching meng-hua lu</i> , <i>Meng-liang lu</i> and other works). Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 comp. Kyōto: Kyōto daigaku Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1979. 556 p.
--	--

A general index of key terms has been compiled for the seven Sung-period **administrative handbooks** or *kuan-chen* 官箴 listed below, some of which are practical and others moralistic.

Li Yuan-pi 李元弼	<i>Tso-i tzu-chen</i> 作邑自箴
Lü Pen-chung 呂本中	<i>Kuan chen</i> 官箴
Chu Hsi 朱熹	<i>Chu Wen-kung cheng-hsun</i> 朱文公政訓
Anon.	<i>Chou-hsien t'i-kang</i> 州縣提綱
Chen Te-hsiu 真德秀	<i>Chen Hsi-shan cheng-hsun</i> 真西山政訓
Hu T'ai-ch'u 胡太初	<i>Ch'ou-lien hsu-lun</i> 書簾緒論
Hsu Yueh-ch'ing 許月卿	<i>Pai-kuan chen</i> 百官箴

see:

J4617/4473

Sō Gen kanshin sōgō sakuin
宋元官箴總合索引
(Combined index to Sung and Yuan *kuan-chen*).
Akagi Ryūji 赤城隆之 and Satake Yasuhiko 佐竹靖彦 comp.
Tōkyō: Kyūko shoin, 1987. 163 p.

This supersedes the following, an index to the entry headings of all but the last of the administrative handbooks listed above.

BJ1685.2/3203

LoC: Z7165.C6 A73 1950 Japan

Kanshin mokuji sōgōsakuin
官箴目次總合索引
(Combined index to the headings in *kuan-chen* [handbooks for local officials]).
Araki Toshikazu 荒木敏一 and Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
Kyōto: Kyōdai Tōyōshi kenkyūshitsu, 1950. 72 p.
McMullen #197.

VI.C. LITERARY WRITINGS AND MISCELLANIES

a. prose

Comprehensive indexes to the documents in literary collections and entries in miscellanies also reference many key terms. For indexes to the following **literary collections**:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Chang Fang-p'ing (1007-1091)
張方平 | <i>Le-ch'üan chi</i>
樂全集 |
| Chen Te-hsiu (1178-1235)
真德秀 | <i>Hsi-shan hsien-sheng chen-wen-chung kung wen-chi</i>
西湖先生真文忠公文集 |
| Chu Hsi (1130-1200)
朱熹 | <i>Chu Wen-kung wen-chi</i>
朱文公文集 |
| Fan Chung-yen (989-1052)
范仲淹 | <i>Fan Wen-cheng kung chi</i>
范文正公集 |
| Hung Kua (1117-1184)
洪適 | <i>P'an-chou wen-chi</i>
盤州文集 |
| Ou-yang Hsiu (1007-1072)
歐陽修 | <i>Ou-yang Wen-chung kung ch'üan-chi</i>
歐陽文忠公全集 |
| Ssu-ma Kuang (1019-1086)
司馬光 | <i>Wen-kuo Wen-cheng Ssu-ma wen-chi</i>
溫國文正司馬文集 |
| Tseng Kung (1019-1083)
曾鞏 | <i>Yuan-feng lei-kao</i>
元豐類稿 |
| Yeh Shih (1150-1223)
葉適 | <i>Shui-hsin wen-chi (29+16 chüan)</i>
水心文集 |
| Yin Shu (1001/2-1042)
尹洙 | <i>Ho-nan hsien-sheng wen-chi</i>
河南先生文集 |

see:

Ref (J) PL2293.S24 1970x

LoC: Z7059 .S24 (Orien Japan)

Sōdai bunshū sakuin
宋代文集索引
(Index to Sung-period literary collections).
Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku Tōyōshi kenkyūkai, 1970. 845 p.

McMullen #147.

The following anthology of translations of *ku-wen* 古文 prose has separate indexes for proper nouns and subjects. It covers selected writings by Ou-yang Hsiu, Su Hsun, Su Shih, Su Ch'e, Tseng Kung, and Wang An-shih.

J9100/5645a (19-20) *Tō Sō hakka bun*
 LoC: PL2409 .S5 (Orien Japan) 唐宋八家文
 (Prose of the eight masters of T'ang and Sung).
 Shimizu Shigeru 清水成 comp.
 Tokyo: Asahi shimbunsha, 1956. Index: 33 p.

For an index to titles of pieces in the literary collection of **Su Shih** (1037-1101) see:

R5345/2123 *So Tōba zenshūsakuin*
 蘇東坡全集索引
 [*Su Tung-p'o ch'üan-chi so-yin*]
 (Index to the complete works of Su Tung-p'o).
 Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
 Kyoto: Ibundō, 1958. 60 p.
 McMullen #141

For **miscellanies** (*pi-chi*) by:

Chang Shun-min (c. 1034-c. 1110) 張舜民	<i>Hua-man chi</i> 書壘集
Chao Sheng (?-after 1236) 趙升	<i>Ch'ao-yeh lei-yao</i> 朝野論要
Ch'ien Wen-tzu (<i>chin-shih</i> 1192) 錢文子	<i>Pu Han ping-chih</i> 補漢兵志
Chou Mi (1237-1298) 周密	<i>Ch'i-tung yeh-yü</i> 齊東野語
Chou Mi	<i>Kuei-hsin tsa-chih</i> 葵辛雜識
Chou Mi	<i>Wu-lin chiu-shih</i> 武林舊事
Hsu Ching (1091-1153) 徐競	<i>Kao-li t'u-ching</i> 高麗圖經
Hung Mai (1123-1202) 洪邁	<i>I-chien chih</i> 夷堅志
Hung Mai	<i>Jung-chai sui-pi</i> 容齋隨筆
Kao Ch'eng (?-?) 高承	<i>Shih-wu chi-yuan</i> 事物紀源
Kung Ming-chih (1091-1182) 龔明之	<i>Chung-Wu chi-wen</i> 中吳紀聞
Li Chi-k'o (?-?) 李季可	<i>Ch'iu-ch'uang pai-shuo</i> 秋百說
Lu Chen (957-1014) 路振	<i>Chiu-kuo chih</i> 九國志

- Meng Yuan-lao (c.1080-after 1147) *Tung-ching meng-hua lu*
孟元老 東京夢華錄
- Wang Mou (1151-1213) *Yeh-k'o ts'ung-shu*
王楙 野客叢書
- Wang Ming-ch'ing (c.1127-after 1214) *Hui-chu lu*
王明清 揮塵錄
- Wang Ying-lin (1223-1296) *K'un-hsueh chi-wen*
王應麟 困學記聞
- Wang Yung (?-after 1227) *Yen-i i-mou lu*
王楙 燕翼貽謀錄
- Wu Tzu-mu (?-?) *Meng-liang lu*
吳自牧 夢梁錄
- Wu Tseng (?-after 1170) *Neng-kai-chai man-lu*
吳曾 能改齋漫錄
- Yueh K'o (1183-1234) *K'uei-t'an lu*
岳珂 愧郊錄
- Yueh Shih (930-1007) *Kuang-cho i-chi*
樂史 廣卓異記
- see:
RJ9130.6/5678(J)
PL2257.T6 1954x
LoC: PL2257 .T6 (Orien Japan)
Chūgoku zuihitsu sakuin
中國隨筆索引
(Index to Chinese miscellanies).
Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku Tōyōshi kenkyūkai, 1954. 1018 p.
McMullen #195.
- For **miscellanies** by:
- Ch'eng Ta-ch'ang (1123-1195) *Yen-fan lu* (16+6 *chüan*)
程大昌 演繁錄
- Chiang Shao-yü (?-after 1145) *Huang-ch'ao shih-pao lei-yuan*
江少虞 皇朝事實類苑
- Fei Kun (*chin-shih* 1205) *Liang-hsi man-chih*
費袞 梁溪漫志
- Ho Wei (1077-1145) *Ch'un-chu chi-wen*
何遠 春渚紀聞
- Hsu Hsuan (917-992) *Chi-shen lu*
徐鉉 稽神錄
- Lo Ta-ching (?-after 1248) *Ho-lin yü-lu*
羅大經 鶴林玉露
- Su Ch'e (1039-1112) *Lung-ch'uan lueh-chih*
蘇轍 龍川略志
- Su Shih (1037-1101) *Tung-p'o chih-lin*
蘇軾 東坡志林
- Tseng Kung (1019-1083) *Lung-p'ing chi*
曾鞏 隆平集
- Wang Kuan-kuo (?-after 1144) *Hsueh-lin*
王觀國 學林
- Wang Ming-ch'ing (1127-after 1214) *T'ou-hsia lu*

王明清
Wang Te-ch'en (1036-1116)
王得臣
see:

投轄錄
Chu-shih
塵史

Ref (C) PL2257.C554 1960x

Chūgoku zuihitsu zatcho sakuin 中國隨筆雜著索引
(Index to Chinese miscellanies and miscellaneous writings).
Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku Tōyōshi kenkyūkai, 1960. 1144 p.
Volume 7 of the *Tōyōshi kenkyū sōkanseries*.
McMullen #196.

The following miscellanies can be searched with a **computer database** on a fee-for-use basis. Fifty Sung miscellanies are classified into more than 1600 categories. Users can use either a personal name index or a subject index. Each search produces references citing the book, *chüan*, page, and subject classification. This database is not available in the United States at the time of publication. Inquiries regarding possible charges for searches should be directed to Professor Liu at Hang-chou University.

Tien-nao-hua Sung-jen pi-chi chien-so hsi-t'ung
電腦化宋人筆記檢索系統
(Computerized index to Sung miscellanies).
Liu K'un-t'ai 劉坤太

The following is a list of authors, titles, and editions used in this computerised database.

author	title	edition
Ch'en Shih-ch'ung 陳世崇	<i>Sui-yin man-lu</i> 隨隱漫錄	TK (<i>Pi-chi hsiao-shuo ta-kuan</i>)
Chang Pang-chi 張邦基	<i>Mo-chuang man-lu</i> 墨莊漫錄	SPTK (Ssu-pu ts'ung-k'an)
Chang Shih-nan 張世南	Yu-huan chi-wen 游宦紀聞	CH (Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü)
Chang Tuan-i 張端義	<i>Kuei-erh chi</i> 貴耳集	CH
Chao Ling-chih 趙令時	<i>Hou-ch'ing lu</i> 侯鯖錄	TK
Chao Yen-wei 趙彥衛	<i>Yun-lu man-ch'ao</i> 雲麓漫鈔	TK
Chao Yü-shih 趙與時	<i>Pin-t'ui lu</i> 賓退錄	TK
Chiang Hsiu-fu 江休復	<i>Chiang Lin-chi tsa-chih</i> 江鄰幾雜誌	TK
Chou Mi 周密	<i>Ch'i-tung yeh-yü</i> 齊東野語	CH
Chu I 朱翌	<i>I-chueh-liao tsa-chi</i> 猗覺寮雜記	TK
Chu Pien 朱弁	<i>Ch'ü-wei chiu-wen</i> 曲洧舊聞	TK
Chuang Ch'o 莊綽	<i>Chi-le pien</i> 雞肋編	CH
Fan Kung-ch'eng 范公偁	<i>Kuo-t'ing lu</i> 過庭錄	TK
Fang Shao 方勺	<i>Po-che pien</i> (10-chüan edition) 泊宅編 (10 卷本)	CH

Fang Shao 方勺	<i>Po-che pien</i> (3-chüan edition) 泊宅編 (3卷本)	CH
Huang Ch'ao-ying 黃朝英	<i>Ching-k'ang hsiang-su tsa-chi</i> 靖康細素雜記	Hua-tung ku-chi ch'u-pan-she
Ho Wei 何蘧	<i>Ch'un-chu chi-wen</i> 春渚紀聞	CH
Li Hsin-ch'uan 李心傳	<i>Chiu-wen cheng-wu</i> 舊聞證誤	CH
Li Yuan-kang 李元綱	<i>Hou-te lu</i> 厚德錄	TK
Liu Ch'ang-shih 劉昌詩	<i>Lu-p'u pi-chi</i> 蘆浦筆記	TK
Lo Ta-ching 羅大經	<i>Ho-lin yü-lu</i> (<i>chia pien, i pien, ping pien</i>) 鶴林玉露 (甲編、乙編、丙編)	CH
Lu Yu 陸游	<i>Lao-hsueh-an pi-chi</i> 老學庵筆記	CH
Ma Yung-ch'ing 馬永卿	<i>Lan-chen-tzu</i> 懶真子	TK
Ou-yang Hsiu 歐陽修	<i>Kuei-t'ien lu</i> 歸田錄	CH
P'eng Cheng 彭乘	<i>Mo-k'o hui-hsi</i> 墨客揮犀	SPTK
Fei Kun 費袞	<i>Liang-hsi man-chih</i> 梁溪漫志	Shanghai ku-chi ch'u-pan-she
Shao Po-wen 邵伯溫	<i>Shao-shih wen-chien lu</i> 邵氏聞見錄	CH
Shao Po 邵博	<i>Shao-shih wen-chien hou-lu</i> 邵氏聞見後錄	CH
Shen Kua 沈括	<i>Meng-hsi pi-t'an</i> 夢溪筆談	SPTK
Shih Hsiao-ying 釋曉瑩	<i>Lo-hu yeh-lu</i> 羅湖野錄	SPTK
Su Ch'e 蘇轍	<i>Lung-ch'uan lueh-chih</i> 龍川略志	CH
Su Ch'e 蘇轍	<i>Lung-ch'uan pieh-chih</i> 龍川別志	CH
Su Shih 蘇軾	<i>Ch'ou-ch'ih pi-chi</i> 仇池筆記	Hua-tung ku-chi ch'u-pan-she
Su Shih 蘇軾	<i>Tung-p'o chih-lin</i> 東坡志林	Hua-tung ku-chi ch'u-pan-she
T'ien K'uang 田況	<i>Ju-lin kung-i</i> 儒林公議	TK
Ts'ai T'ao 蔡條	<i>T'ieh-wei-shan ts'ung-t'an</i> 鐵圍山叢談	CH
Tseng Min-hsing 曾敏行	<i>Tu-hsing tsa-chih</i> 獨醒雜志	Shanghai ku-chi ch'u-pan-she
Wang Chih 王銍	<i>Mo chi</i> 默記	CH
Wang Kung 王鞏	<i>Chia-shen tsa-chi</i> 甲申雜記	TK

Wang Kung 王鞏	<i>Sui-shou tsa-lu</i> 隨手雜錄	TK
Wang Ming-ch'ing 王明清	<i>Hui-chu lu (ch'ien lu, hou lu, san lu, yü lu)</i> 揮麈錄 (前錄、后錄、三錄、餘錄)	CH
Wang P'i-chih 王闢之	<i>Sheng-shui yen-t'an lu</i> 澗水燕談錄	CH
Wang Yung 王楙	<i>Yen i i-mou lu</i> 燕翼詒謀錄	CH
Wei T'ai 魏泰	<i>Tung-hsuan pi-lu</i> 車軒筆錄	CH
Wu Ch'u-hou 吳處厚	<i>Ch'ing-hsiang tsa-chi</i> 青箱雜記	CH
Wu Chiung 吳炯	<i>Wu-tsung chih</i> 五總志	TK
Wu Tseng 吳曾	<i>Neng-kai-chai man-lu</i> 能改齋漫錄	Shanghai ku-chi ch'u-pan-she
Yü Wen-pao 俞文豹	<i>Ch'ui-chien lu (wai-chi)</i> 吹劍錄 (外集)	TK
Yueh K'o 岳珂	<i>K'uei-t'an lu</i> 愧鄰錄	SPTK
Yueh K'o 岳珂	<i>T'ing-shih</i> 程史	CH

Liu discusses the value of his database in:

2451/0257
LoC: DS735 .H737 China

"Tien-nao-hua Sung-jen pi-chi chien-so hsi-t'ung ta-k'o-wen"
《電腦化宋人筆記檢索系統》答客問
(Answers to questions about the computerized index system to Sung
miscellanies).
Liu K'un-t'ai 劉坤太
Hsin shih-hsueh 2:2 (1991): 139-140.

Hung Mai 洪邁(1123-1202) authored a miscellany on matters pertaining to intellectual culture and official service. The index below includes personal names.

Ref (C) Z3101.Y446x vol.13

Jung-chai sui-pi wu-chi tsung-ho yin-te
容齋隨筆五集綜合引得
(Combined indices to the five collections of the *Jung-chai sui-pi*).
William Hung
Harvard-Yenching Sinological Index Series, #13.
Peking: Harvard-Yenching Institute, 1938; rpt. Taipei: Chinese
Materials and Research Aids Service Center, 1966. 123 p.
McMullen #146.

Hung Mai also authored and compiled a series that recorded unusual and bizarre encounters. The following indexes personal names (with a brief identification of the role of obscure figures), place names, titles of books cited, and entry headings.

5745/3833.1
LoC: GR335.H892 C46 (Orient
China)

I-chien chih t'ung-chien
夷堅志通檢
(Index to the *I-chien chih*).
Chang Fu-jui 張馥蕊 comp.
Paris : l'Institut des hautes études chinoises, Collège de France,
1976. Taipei: xuesheng shuju, 1977.

For book titles appearing in the section on fiscal policy in the *Sung hui-yao* see:

J4353/3810(1)

Sō kaiyō shūkōshokka sakuin, jinmei shomei-hen

宋會要輯稿食貨索引人名書名篇

[*Sung hui-yao chi-kao shih-huo so-yin jen-ming shu-ming p'ien*](Index to *Sung hui-yao chi-kao*"shih-huo" section: personal names and book titles).

Sōdaishi kenkyū iinkai 宋代史研究委員會

Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1982. 150 p.

Imperial edicts in the same work are indexed in a companion volume:

J4353/3810(2)

LoC: HC427.6 .S64 1985 Japan

Sō kaiyōshūkō shokka sakuin, nengappi shōchoku-hen

宋會要輯稿食貨索引年月日詔敕篇

[*Sung hui-yao chi-kao shih-huo so-yin nien-yueh jih chao-ch'ih p'ien*](Index to *Sung hui-yao chi-kao*"shih-huo" section: dates and imperial edicts).

Sōdaishi kenkyū iinkai 宋代史研究委員會

Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1985. 168 p.

For the titles of books and compositions in the *Ssu-k'u ch'üan-shu* edition of the *Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu*, which covers the period 1117-1161, see

(C) DS751.L5 1992x

"Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu chung so-chien shu-p'ien tso-che, shu-p'ien ming so-yin"

建炎以來繫年要錄中所見書篇作者書篇名索引

(Index to titles and authors in the *Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu*).

P'ei Ju-ch'eng 裴汝誠 ed.

In *Chien-yen i-lai hsi-nien yao-lu*.

Shanghai: Shang-hai ku-chi, 1992.

Vol. 4, pp. 509-614.

b. ci poetry

Quan Song ci

全宋詞

(Complete Song Ci)

Nanjing shifan daxue ketizu, under Zhang Cheng 南京師範大學課題組, 人張成

http://202.119.104.80/Ci_ku/ci_web/title2.htm

This is part of a larger database including ci written between Tang and Yuan times titled 全唐宋金元词文库及赏析系统. It includes 21085 ci by 1493 authors. The interface provides various searching options. The site also includes various indexes, biographical sketches of all authors, and an introduction to tonal patterns.

Tang Song ci quanwen jiansuo xitong

唐宋詞全文檢索系統

(Full-Text Searchable System of Tang and Song Ci)

Yuanzhi daxue, under Luo Fengzhu 元智大學羅鳳珠

http://cls.admin.yzu.edu.tw/CSP/W_DB/index.htm

This is part of a larger database including literary and historical materials on Tang through Song times, titled 唐宋文史資料庫. According to the editors almost 20,000 Song ci are included. Features powerful searching options. Users can search by author, title, time period, free text, or tune. Supports combined and Boolean searching. The ci by Su Shi are searchable by spatial and temporal criteria.

Quan Song ci zuoshe cidiao suoyin

全宋詞作者詞調索引

(Author and Tune Index to The Complete Song Ci)

Gao Xitian 高喜田, Kou Qi 寇琪
Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1992.

The following is an index to anthologies of *tz'u* 詞 poems:

LoC: Z3108.L5 S45 (Orien China) *Tō Sō shisen goshu sōgōintoku*
唐宋詞選五種總合引得
(Combined index to five collections of T'ang and Sung *tz'u*).
Shirai Rakuzan 百井樂山 comp.
Tokyo: published by the author, 1967. 93 p.
McMullen #207,

c. shi poetry

Quan Song shi fenxi xitong
全宋詩分析系統
(Analytical Database of Song Shi)
Beijing daxue shuju fenxi yanjiu zhongxin 北京大學數據分析研究中心,
2001-
<http://chinese.pku.edu.cn/kgrid/songPoem/>

This database allows for convenient browsing, powerful searching, and numerical analysis of Song poems. The number of poems may go up to 250,000 if all poems contained in *Quan Song shi* (Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1991-1998) are entered into the database. Users can search by author, free text, genre, and tonal patterns. They can also display tonal patterns in the results, search for similar poems, and perform statistical analyses using specific categories of texts in the database. It is still under development.

Song Shi
宋詩
(Song Poetry)
Yuanzhi daxue, under Luo Fengzhu 元智大學羅鳳珠
<http://cls.admin.yzu.edu.tw/QSS/HOME.HTM>

This is part of a larger database including literary and historical materials on Tang through Song times, titled 唐宋文史資料庫. Includes the poetry of Su Shi, Chao Buzhi, Lu You, Fan Chengda, Yang Wanli, Wang Yucheng, Fan Zhongyan, Yan Shu, Mei Yaochen, Ouyang Xiu, Su Shunqin, Su Xun, Wang Anshi, Su Che, Deng Zhongchen, Qin Guan, Huang Tingjian, He Zhu, Chen Shidao, Zhang Lei, Li Zhi, Chao Yuezhi, and Wang Ling. The poems can be searched by author, title, phrase, and genre. The system supports combined and Boolean searching.

So Shi So Jun shi kensaku
蘇軾蘇洵詩檢索
(Index to the Poetry of Su Shi and Su Xun)
Sueyoshi Toshihiko 末葭敏久, 2000-
<http://home.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/cbn/sushi.htm>
<http://home.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/sueyoshi/kensak.html>

This database is based on the Zhonghua shuju edition of *Su Shi shiji* and *Quan Song shi* for Su Xun's poetry. Poems can be searched by title or phrase. The results refer to volume, page, item and line numbers in the editions used.

Quan Song shi, 1-72 ce zuozhe suoyin
全宋詩, 1-72冊作者索引
(Author Index to *Quan Song Shi*, vols. 1-72)
Xu Hongxia 許紅霞, Zhu Baomo 朱寶模, et al.
Beijing: Beijing daxue chubanshe, 1999.

Zen Sōshi sakuin
全宋詩索引

(*Index to All Song Poetry*)

Matsuura Takashi 松浦崇, Ding Fubao 丁福保

Fukuoka: Fukuoka Daigaku Chūgoku Bungakukai, 1991.

Ref (C) Z3108.L5 S84 1985
LoC: Z3108.L5 S84 1985 China

T'ang Sung ming-shih so-yin
唐宋名詩索引
(Index to famous T'ang and Sung poems).
Sun Kung-wang 孫公望 comp.
Ch'ang-sha: Hu-nan jen-min, 1985. 466 p.

This work has four indexes, covering the first two characters of every couplet, the title of the poem, the poetic theme or key words, and the author.

The following works, on *t'zu* and *shih* poetry respectively, contain indexes by the the first character of the line and, in the case of *shih* poems, by title as well. See also [IV.A.3.b](#).

5577/4089

Sung tz'u chien-shang tz'u-tien
宋詞鑒賞辭典
(Guide to Sung *tz'u* poetry).
Ho Hsin-hui 賀新輝 ed.
Peking: Pei-ching Yen-shan ch'u-pan-she, 1987. 1394 p.

5214.5/7255

Sung shih chien-shang tz'u-tien
宋詩鑒賞辭典
(Guide to Sung *shih* poetry).
Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu ch'u-pan-she, 1987. 1610 p.

For an index to the titles of the 9135 poems in **Lu Yu's** (1125-1210) 85-*chüan*. poetry collection, the *Chien-nan shih-kao*, see:

Roku Yu Kennan shikō shidai sakuin
陸游《劍南詩稿》詩題索引
Murakami Tetsumi 村上哲見 comp.
Nara joshi daigaku: Chūgoku bungakukai, 1984. 2, 130, 10p.

This indexes poems by the Japanese pronunciation of the first word in the title. There are also stroke-count and *p'in-yin* indexes. References are to both the 1976 Chung-hua shu-chū edition and Mao-shih Chi-ku-ko imprint.

VI.D. NEO-CONFUCIAN AND BUDDHIST TEXTS

The following several works index writings and records of oral teachings in the Neo-Confucian school of the Ch'eng brothers and Chu Hsi. The first, an index to *Reflections on Things at Hand* (*Chin-ssu lu*), is appended to the annotated Japanese translation. The first phrase in Japanese and significant terms for each passage are indexed.

J9100/0230(37)
LoC: B128.C53 C4534 (Orien
Japan)

Kinshi roku
近思錄
[*Chin-ssu lu*]
(Reflections on things at hand).
Ichikawa Yasuji 市川安司
Tokyo: Meiji shoin, 1976. 27, 676 p.

For the record of oral teachings of the Ch'engs see:

Ni Tei isho sakuin
二程遺書索引

[*Erh-Ch'eng i-shu so-yin*]
 (Index to the *i-shu of the two Ch'engs*).
 Yoshida Kōhei 吉田公平 et al. comp.
 Fukuoka: Kyūshū daigaku bungakubu Chūgoku kenkyūshitsu, 1973.
 33, 416 p.

and

LoC: B128.C3583 Z89 1974 Japan *Ni Tei gaisho suigen sakuin*
 二程外書粹言索引
 [*Erh-Ch'eng wai-shu ts'ui-yen so-yin*]
 (Index to the *Wai-shu* of the two Ch'engs).
 Takeuchi Hiroyuki 竹内弘行 et al. comp.
 Fukuoka: Kyūshūdaigaku bungakubu Chūgoku kenkyūshitsu, 1974.
 20, 232 p.

The editions indexed and the two indexes noted above are reprinted in:

J1209/2168 *Ni Tei zensho Ni Tei zensho sakuin.*
 二程全書二程全書索引
 [*Erh-Ch'eng ch'üan-shu Erh-Ch'eng ch'üan-shu so-yin*]
 (Complete works of the two Ch'engs, with index).
 Kyoto: Chūbun shuppansha, 1979. 2 volumes.

For **Chu Hsi's** writings, see:

Ref (J) B128.C53 Z9 *Shushi bunshū koyū meishi sakuin*
 LoC: B128.C53 Z9 朱子文集固有名詞索引
 [*Chu-tzu wen-chi ku-yu ming-tz'u so-yin*]
 (Index to proper nouns in Master Chu's literary collection).
 Yamanoi Yū 山井湧 and Ōshima Akira 大島晃 comp.
 Tokyo: Tōkyō daigaku Shushi kenkyūkai, 1980. 52 and 999 p.

For an index to personal names, places, and book titles in Chu Hsi's classified conversations (the Chu-tzu yü-lei), see:

"Shushi gorui jinmei chimei shomei sakuin."
 朱子語類人名地名書名索引
 (Index of personal and place names and book titles in the Chu-tzu yü-lei).
 Satō Hitoshi 佐藤仁 comp.
 Appended to Shushi gorui 朱子語類
 Kyoto: Chūbun shuppansha, 1979.

This is also available in a Taiwan reprint:

1237/2302A (1982:8) "Chu-tzu yü-lei so-yin (jen-ming, ti-ming, shu-ming)"
 朱子語類索引人名地名書名
 (Index of personal names, place names, and titles in the Chu-tzu yü-lei).
 In volume 8 of Chu-tzu yü-lei, fu so-yin
 朱子語類附索引
 Taipei: Cheng-chung shu-chū, 1982.

For the most important philosophical sections of the Classified Conversations of Master Chu, see:

1237/2302.2 *Shushi gorui dai-ikkan yori dai-jūsankan ni itaru goku sakuin*
 LoC: B128.C53 C4627 (Orien) 朱子語類自第一卷至第十三卷語句索引

Japan) [Chu-tzu yü-lei tzu ti-i chüan chih ti-shih-san chüan yü-chü so-yin]
(Index of phrases in sections 1-13 of the Chu-tzu yü-lei).
Satō Hitoshi 佐藤仁 comp.
Nagoya: Saika shorin, 1975. 10, 278 p.

For an index to the colloquial vocabulary used in Chu Hsi's Classified Conversations, see:

J1237/7650 Shushi gorui "kōgo goi" sakuin
LoC: B128.C53 Z85 1988 Japan 朱子語類口語語彙索引
[Chu-tzu yü-lei k'ou-yü yü-hui so-yin]
(Index of colloquial usage in the Chu-tzu yü-lei).
Shiomi Kunihiko 鹽見邦彦 comp.
Kyoto: Chūbun shuppansha, 1988. 240 p.

The following index series groups phrases from Chu Hsi's commentaries by topic, noting their location in the original.

(J) B128.C53 Z8 1954 Shushi Shisho shūchū sakuin
LoC: B128.C53 Z8 1954 (Orien 朱子四書集註索引
Japan) [Chu-tzu Ssu-shu chi-chu so-yin]
(Index to Master Chu's Collected commentaries on the Four books
Gotō Toshimizu 後藤俊瑞 comp.
Hiroshima: Hiroshima daigaku bungakubu Chūgoku tetsugaku
kenkyūshitsu, 1954. 641 p.
Vol. I in the series.
McMullen #144.

(J) B128.C53 Z8 1954 Shushi Shisho wakumon sakuin
LoC: B128.C53 Z8 1954 (Orien 朱子四書或問索引
Japan) [Chu-tzu Ssu-shu huo-wen so-yin]
(Index to Chu-tzu's "Questions about the Four Books.")
Gotō Toshimizu 後藤俊瑞 comp.
Hiroshima: Hiroshima daigaku bungakubu Chūgoku tetsugaku
kenkyūshitsu, 1955. 848 p.
Vol. II in the series.
McMullen #145.

(J) B128.C53 Z8 1954 Shishūden jirui sakuin
LoC: B128.C53 Z8 1954 (Orien 詩集傳事類索引
Japan) [Shih chi-chuan shih-lei so-yin]
(Index to Chu Hsi's Shih chi-chuan).
Gotō Toshimizu 後藤俊瑞 comp.
Nishinomiya: Mukogawa joshi daigaku bungakubu, 1960. 598 p.
Vols. III and IV in the series.
McMullen #143.

There is an excellent series of concordances for Ch'an Buddhist texts, a number of which date the Song period.

Hanazono University Concordance Series
花園大學一字索引叢書
Urs App ed.
Kyoto: International Research Institute for Zen Buddhism,
Hanazono University, 1993-95.
Vol. 1 Lin-chi lu 臨濟錄 xxxiii, 331, 17 pp.
Vol. 2
etc.

Each volume includes the Taisho Tripitaka text, a radical index, stroke-count index, and four-corner index, and references to translations.

V.I.E. INDEXES TO SUNG TEXTS WHOSE CONTENTS ARE MAINLY PRE-SUNG

The *T'ai-p'ing yü-lan* and *T'ai-p'ing kuang-chi*, great court compendia from the end of the tenth century, were drawn from pre-Sung writings. They are indexed by the following:

(C)Z3101.Y446x vol.23 LoC: AI19.C5 Y55 vol. 23 (Orient China)	T'ai'ping yülan yinde 太平御覽引得 (Index to the T'ai'ping yü-lan). Harvard-Yenching Institute Sinological Index Series, #23. Beijing: Harvard-Yenching Institute, 1935; rpt. Taipei: Chengwen Publishing Co., 1966. 261 p. McMullen #165,
---	--

and the following, which indexes section and sub-section titles from the table of contents:

Chinn Ho RR R 9297 4462.8	T'ai-p'ing yü-lan so-yin 太平御覽索引 (Index to the T'ai-p'ing yü-lan). Ch'ien Ya-hsin 錢亞新 comp. Shanghai: Shang-wu yin-shu-kuan, 1934. 27, 5, 81 p. McMullen #166.
---------------------------	--

Taiping yulan yinde, Taiping guangji yinde
太平御覽引得太平廣記引得
(Index to *Taiping yulan* and *Taiping guangji*).
Nie Chongqi 聶崇岐 et al.
Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe 上海古籍出版社, 1990.

The following covers persons and titles of books cited:

Ref (C) PL2446.T353 C5 LoC: PL2446.T353 C5 (Orient China)	T'ai'ping kuangchi jenming shuming soyin 太平廣記人名書名索引 (Personal-name and book-title index to the T'ai'ping kuangchi) Chou Tz'uchi 周次吉 comp. Taipei: Iwen yinshu kuan, 1973. 127, 164, 61 p. McMullen #168.
---	---

Ref (C) Z3101.Y446x vol.15 LoC: AI19.C5 Y55 vol. 15 (Orient China)	T'ai-p'ing kuang-chi p'ien-mu chi yin-shu yin-te 太平廣記篇目及引書引得 (Index to section headings and titles of books quoted in the T'ai'ping kuangchi). Teng Ssu-yü 鄧嗣禹 comp. Harvard-Yenching Institute Sinological Index Series, #15. Peking: Harvard-Yenching Institute, 1934; rpt. Taipei: Chengwen Publishing Co., 1966. 60, 43 p. McMullen #167.
--	---

Note also

9200/8073 LoC: H8.C47 J46 China	"T'ai-p'ing kuang-chi yin-shu yin-te pu-cheng" 太平廣記引書引得補正 (Supplement to the Index to books quoted in the T'ai-p'ing kuang- chi). Yeh Ch'ing-ping 葉慶炳 (Fu-jen ta-hsueh) Jen-wen hsueh-pao 人文學報 2 (1972): 179-196,
------------------------------------	--

and

5736/4462.51
LoC: AC149.T323 T35 1982 China
Taiping guangji suoyin
太平廣記索引
(Index to the Taiping guangji)
Luo Xihou 羅錫厚, Zhou Xueying 周雪瑛, and Ma Xuchuan 馬緒傳
Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1982. 168 p.

which indexes book titles and section headings as found in the 1961 Chung-hua shu-chü edition of the work. There is an index to part of the Ts'e-fu yuan-kuei, the great compendium of administrative history, indexing personal names, place names, offices, titles, customs and beliefs, and practices of foreign peoples found in chüan 652-664 and 956-1000:

R9297/1184.8
LoC: AE2.T763 U87 1938 Japan
Sappu genki, hōshibu, gaishinbu sakuin
冊府元龜奉使部外臣部索引
(Index to the sections on ambassadors and foreign vassals in the Ts'e-fu yuan-kuei).
Utsunomiya Kiyoyoshi 宇都宮清吉 and Naitō Boshin 內藤戊申 comp.
Tokyo: Tōhō bunka kenkyūjo, 1938; rpt. Kyoto: Rinzen shoten, 1988. 994 p.
McMullen #89.

Here we may also note the comprehensive index to Ssu-ma Kuang's 司馬光 Tzu-chih t'ung-chien:

Chinn Ho RR R 2512 1279.2
Shiji tsugan sakuin
資治通鑑索引
[Tzu-chih t'ung-chien so-yin]
(Index to Tzu-chih t'ung-chien).
Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1961. 381 p.
McMullen #90.

For Yeh Ta-ch'ing's 葉大慶 (c.s. 1205) K'ao-ku chih-i, see:

Ref Z3101.Y446x vol.3
LoC: AI19.C5 Y55 vol. 3 (Orient
China)
K'ao-ku chih-i yin-te
考古質疑引得
(Index to K'ao-ku chih-i).
Harvard-Yenching Institute Sinological Index Series #3
Peking: Harvard-Yenching Institute, 1931; rpt. Taipei: Ch'eng-wen, 1966. 14 p.
McMullen #142.

For the Ching-te ch'uan-teng lu, a collection of Buddhist biographies, see:

J9161/5672
"Keitoku dentōroku koyū meishi sakuin"
景德傳燈錄固有名詞索引
["Ching-te ch'uan-teng lu ku-yu ming-tz'u so-yin"]
(Index to proper nouns in the Ching-te ch'uan-teng lu).
Suzuki Tetsuo 鈴木哲雄
Chūgoku kankei ronsetsu shiryō
中國關係論說資料
13.1.2 (1971): 33-45 and 14.1.1 (1972): 56-100.
McMullen #276.

The above has five sections: personal names, place names, temple and pagoda names, reign periods, and administrative terms. Arranged by Japanese pronunciation.

For an index to the Northern Sung Taoist encyclopedia Yun-chi ch'i-ch'ien 雲笈七籤, see:

WID-LC BL1900.A1Y8337 1981
Index du Yunji qiqian: projet Tao-tsang.

LoC: BL1900.A1 Y8337 1981

Kristopher M. Schipper.

Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1981-1982. Publications, v.131. 2 vols. 1398 and 154 p.

VI.F. COMPREHENSIVE INDEXES AND ELECTRONIC DATABASES

Comprehensive Indexes in Print

The Great Compendium of the Yongle Reign (Yongle da dian) contains many fragments of Song texts which are no longer extant in full. These fragments can be searched with the following two indexes:

(J) AE2.Y853 K56 2001x *Eiraku taiten sakuin*
 永樂大典索引
 (Index to Yongle da dian)
 Kinugawa Tsuyoshi 衣川強
 Tōkyō: Hakuteisha, 2001. iii, 71, 868, 2 p.

This title indexes entries from and titles cited in *Yongle da dian*. References are based on the Zhonghua shuju edition. Entries are arranged by Japanese pronunciation. There is a pinyin index in front.

Ref (C) AE2.Y852 L83 1997x *Yongle da dian suoyin*
 永樂大典索引
 (Index to Yongle da dian)
 Luan Guiming 樂貴明
 Beijing: Zuoja chubanshe, 1997. 16, 1236 p.

This is a name and title index organized by the four-corner system and with stroke order and pronunciation finding aids.

It includes a table of contents of remaining and indexed chapters, indicating the original sources of the chapters.

Comprehensive Electronic Databases with Major Song Collections

1) All texts written and compiled during the Song Dynasty that were included in the *Siku quanshu* can be searched in the electronic version of this eighteenth-century collection:

(C) AC149.S69 2002x;
 Online (Proprietary) *Wenyuange Siku quanshu dianziban* [SKQS-DZB]
 文淵閣四庫全書電子版
 (The Electronic Edition of the Complete Works in the Four Treasuries--
 Based on the Wenyuan Pavilion Copy)
 Hong Kong: Dizhi wenhua; Zhongwen daxue chubanshe, 1999. 183 CD-
 ROMs or online subscription.
<http://www.sikuquanshu.com>

This edition includes related titles such as *Siku quanshu zongmu* 四庫全書總目 and *Siku quanshu jianming mulu* 四庫全書簡明目錄. It also features a character dictionary and a date conversion tool.

Searches can be limited to Song titles, genres and authors. For more information on how to search, consult the following guides:

[Hilde De Weerd's guide to the University of Tennessee's online version](#) (2003)

[Hilde De Weerd's guide to Harvard University's CD-ROM version](#) (2001) [MS Reader](#) ; [Word document](#)

[Martin Heijdra's guide to Princeton University's online version](#) (2002)

2)

Online (Proprietary);

Zhongyang yanjiuyuan Hanji dianzi wenxian [AS]

partially non-proprietary) 中央研究院漢籍電子文獻
(Academia Sinica's Chinese Electronic Texts)
Zhongyang yanjiuyuan Jisuan zhongxin 中央研究院計算中心
Taipei: Zhongyang yanjiuyuan Jisuan zhongxin, 2000.
<http://www.sinica.edu.tw/~tdbproj/handy1/>

The Academia Sinica databases include a large number of Song historical and literary works, local gazetteers (fangzhi, tujing), miscellanies (biji), administrative encyclopedias (such as Ma Duanlin's *Wenxian tongkao* and *Song Huiyao*), medical, philosophical and religious texts. Searches can be conducted in individual titles or in several titles or subject categories at the same time (with the exception of *Song Huiyao*--see VI.B). Unlike the electronic edition of the *Siku quanshu*, the editions used are in most cases modern punctuated and annotated editions. The titles included and the editions used are listed in an [excel sheet](#) (2003). Updates to this sheet can be accessed at the main site listed above. Titles and editions can also be searched from the new interface (currently still under construction) <http://140.109.138.237:9080/Handy/index>
US Libraries with full access to the Academia Sinica databases include Harvard University and the University of California.

For an account of the making of this database and an overview of sources and editions included, see

(C) DS751 .H8548 2003x "Zhongyang yanjiuyuan renwen jisuan de huigu yu qianzhan"
中央研究院人文計算的回顧與前瞻
(Reflections on and Prospects for Humanities Computing at Academia Sinica)
Huang Kuanchong 黃寬重
Shishi, wenxian yu renwu: Song shi yanjiu lunwen ji (Taipei: Dongda tushu gongsi, 2003). pp. 139-203.

3)

Online (Proprietary;
individual subscription) *Guoxue baodian* [GXBD]
国学宝典
(Precious Texts for Chinese Studies)
Beijing: Beijing guoxue shidai wenhua chuanbo co., 1999-
<http://www.gxbd.com/>
Also: <http://www.guoxue.com/>

This database includes a large number of Song Dynasty historical, philosophical, religious and literary works (including large anthologies of Song prose and poetry in the shi and ci genres), encyclopedias, miscellanies (biji), some gazetteers, and a selection of Qing Dynasty and twentieth-century scholarship on topics related to the Song period. This database uses modern punctuated and annotated editions. It includes, for example, modern editions of Su Shi's or Zhu Xi's collected works. This distinguishes it from similar material included in the electronic edition of the *Siku quanshu* described above.

For a classified list of titles included, go to <http://www.guoxue.com/cp/gjjs/gxbd.htm>

Note that this list does not mention the editions used and does not specify copyright privileges!

The company also sells thematic collections chosen from this large database in CD-ROM format. See the site listed above for more information.

4) All texts written during the Song Dynasty or Song editions of pre-Song texts included in the early twentieth-century series *Sibu congan* can be viewed and searched in the electronic version:

Online (Proprietary) *Sibu congan dianziban* [SBCK-DZB]
四部叢刊電子版
(The Electronic Edition of The Four Treasures Series)
Beijing: Wanfang shuju dianzi chubanshe, Beijing shutongwen, 2001. 24
CD-ROMs or online subscription.

<http://www.unihan.com.cn/zycp.htm>

This collection is noted for its reproductions of rare (particularly Song, Yuan and Ming Dynasty) editions of Song texts. The manual includes a table of titles already included in *The Electronic Edition of the Complete Works in the Four Treasuries* (see above), but contrasts the (earlier) *Sibu congkan* editions to the *Siku quanshu* edition.

The software was developed by the same company that produced *The Electronic Edition of the Complete Works in the Four Treasuries*. The functionality and layout is therefore very similar (see guides mentioned above).

Shuzi dianji wang

數字典籍網

(Electronic Texts Net)

Beijing Airusheng shuzihua jishu yanjiu zhongxin 北京愛如生數字化技術研究中心

<http://www.cn-classics.com/index.php>

Includes a large collection of Song texts. There is a list of included titles arranged by subject category, and then by dynasty.

Sui zhi Songdai yishou ziliao dianzihua yilan

隋至宋代一手資料電子化一覽

(An Overview of the Digitization of Primary Texts Dating from the Sui to the Song Dynasties)

Luo Lifang 羅麗芳

<http://www.ihp.sinica.edu.tw/~twsung/data/files/sui-song-060828.xls>

This is an excel file listing major Song primary sources and indicating whether or not they are contained in large full-text databases such as *Scripta Sinica* and *Siku quanshu*. It is particularly useful as it shows both which primary sources have and which have not been made available electronically.

VI.G. SCIENCE

Mathematical Texts:

(C) QA27.C5 G866 2003

Shuxue dianji suoyin: Qin Han zhi Song shehui jingji shiliao

數學典籍索引：秦漢至宋社會經濟史料

(Matériaux pour l'histoire socio-économique index des livres mathématiques (Qin-Han-Song))

Guo Zhengzhong 郭正忠 and Lan Keli 藍克利 (Christian Lamouroux)

Shenyang: Liaoning jiaoyu chubanshe, 2003.

This is an index to 24 titles in total, ranging from Qin though Song times. It includes the work of the two most famous Song mathematicians Qin Jiushao and Yang Hui. The terms indexed were chosen with an eye to make mathematical sources useful to economic and social historians.

VII. Atlases, Maps and Place-Name Indexes

Included here are sources for finding the locations of places within the administrative hierarchy and their geographical locations, indexes to place names in Sung-period geographies and other works, and modern geographical studies. Indexes including but not exclusive to place names will be found in Section VI with other comprehensive indexes.

VII.A. ATLASES AND MAPS

For a bibliography and chronology of Song Dynasty gazetteers and geographical works, see [III.A.](#)

VII.A.1. Historical Atlases and GIS Tools

The most authoritative maps of Sung China are in:

<p>R3020/447(6) Ref (C) G2306.S1 C55 1982 LoC: G2306.S1 C55 1982</p>	<p><i>Chung-kuo li-shih ti-t'u chi</i>, vol. 6: <i>Sung Liao Chin shih-ch'i</i> 中國歷史地圖集：宋遼金時期 (Historical atlas of China: Sung, Liao, and Chin periods). T'an Ch'i-hsiang 譚其驤, general editor. Shanghai: Ti-t'u ch'u-pan, 1982. 115 p.</p>
--	--

This work includes 44 maps for Sung, Liao, and Chin at different periods. The introduction explains the choices made. Maps contain both present-day and Sung-period locations for urban centers, administrative boundaries, and geographical features. There is a place-name index. Tan's historical maps are accessible online. The following GIS system is based on his historical maps:

Chinese Civilization in Time and Space/Zhonghua wenming zhi shikong jichu jiagou 中華文明之時空基礎架構

<http://cts.sinica.edu.tw/framework.php?lang=en>

Academia Sinica/Zhongyang yanjiuyuan 中央研究院

In accuracy, if not in scale, this work supersedes:

<p>R3080.8/4234 LoC: G2306.S1 Y3 1906 (Map) Cage</p>	<p><i>Li-tai yü-ti yen-ko-t'u, ts'e 30, Sung ti-li chih t'u</i> 歷代輿地沿革圖，宋地理志圖 (Maps of changes in historical geography: Maps of the Sung Treatise on geography). Yang Shou-ching 楊守敬 comp. N.p.: 1906; rpt. Taipei: Lien-ching, 1975, 1986.</p>
--	---

which is based on the "Treatise on Administrative Geography" in the *Sung History*. This work is indexed by:

<p>R3080.8/4234 LoC: G2306.S1 Y3 1906 (Map) Cage</p>	<p><i>Li-tai yü-ti yen-ko-t'u so-yin</i> 歷代輿地沿革圖索引 (Index to the <i>Li-tai yü-ti yen-ko-t'u</i>) Ch'iao Yen-kuan 喬衍琯 comp. Taipei: Lien-ching ch'u-pan she, 1981. 1300 p.</p>
--	---

Historical GIS datasets, originally developed by Robert Hartwell and edited by Lex Burman of the CHGIS project, are available at

<http://www.fas.harvard.edu/~chgis/>

<http://yugong.fudan.edu.cn/default.asp>

This page provides a link to "Intro to the Hartwell GIS," an article by Peter K. Bol explaining the limitations and the uses of the Hartwell datasets. From this site users can also search a place-name index and an index to Tan Qixiang's historical atlas.

Shikong zhi lü : Su Shi// Song ren dili zixun xitong
 時空之旅：蘇軾//宋人地理資訊系統
 (Travel in Time and Space: Su Shi// Song People GIS)
 Academia Sinica 中央研究院, Yuanzhi daxue 元智大學
<http://gis2.sinica.edu.tw/bsgis/tab.htm>
<http://gis210.sinica.edu.tw/bsgis/default.htm>

This is part of Luo Fengzhu' s digital archive, titled 網路展書讀. This system provides a geographical searching tool for Su Shi' s travels and poetic work.

VII.A.2. Various Maps

A reliable 32x26" map of **Northern Sung**, especially good for North China border regions, is included with the index to Hu San-hsing's commentary to the *Tzu-chih t'ung-chien*:

J2512/1279.2

Shiji tsugan Kochū chimei sakuin
 資治通鑑胡註地名索引
 (Place-name index to Hu [San-hsing]'s commentary on the
Tzu-chih t'ung-chien).
 Araki Toshikazu 荒木敏一 and Yoneda Kenjirō 米田賢次郎
 comp.
 Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1967. 351 p.
 McMullen #93.

The Sung Project issued a one-page enlargement of the map of Northern Sung circuits and prefectures, c. 1120, found in

RJ2405/5375

Tōyō rekishi daijiten
 東洋歷史大辭典
 (Encyclopedia of East Asian history).
 Tokyo: Heibonsha, 1947, vol. 5, p. 290

For a map of **commercial centers** in the eleventh century, see:

(Wid) EconP 50.5.7
 LoC: AP20 .A58

"Une carte des centres commerciaux de la Chine à la fin du XIe siècle."
 Etienne Balazs.
Annales- Économies, Sociétés, Civilisations 12 (1957): 587-593.

For maps of **transportation routes**, see:

J4488/5234

Tō Sō jidai no kōtsū to chishi chizu no kenkyū
 唐宋時代の交通と地誌地圖の研究
 (Studies of T'ang and Sung transportation routes and maps).
 Aoyama Sadao 青山定雄
 Tokyo: Yoshikawa kōbunkan, 1963.

There is a map of main Northern Sung roads after page 50; of the Pien waterway after page 256; and of the grain transport system after page 444. The volume includes a looseleaf reproduction of a rubbing of a map giving prefectural examination quotas in the mid-thirteenth century.

Note also various maps pertaining to the **regional distribution of chin-shih** 進士 degree holders in:

(W) JQ1512.Z13 E8719 1985
 LoC: JQ1512.Z13 E8719 1985

The Thorny Gates of Learning in Sung China: A Social History of the Examinations
 John W. Chaffee
 Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1985.

For a set of modern and ancient maps of Southern Sung **Hang-chou**, locating wards, government offices, commercial sites, and so on, see:

J2662/4740
LoC: DS750.72 .C48 1984 Japan
Chūgoku kinsei no toshi to bunka
中國近世の都市と文化
(Cities and culture in early modern China).
Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 ed.
Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1984.

A number of **Sung-period maps** exist as engravings and in local gazetteers. Many of these are reproduced, together with scholarly studies, in:

(Map Collection)MAP-LC
G2305.c93 1990f,
(C) G2305.C93 1990
LoC: G2305 .C93 1990
Chung-kuo ku-tai ti-t'u chi
中國古代地圖集
(Collection of Chinese historical maps).
Ts'ao Wan-ju 曹婉如 et al. comp.
Peking: Wen-wu, 1990.

Song ben lidai dili zhizhang tu
宋本歷代地理指掌圖
(A Song Edition of "Geographical Maps of Dynasties Past and Present")
Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1989.

This is an early edition of a twelfth-century historical atlas.

VII.B. GUIDES TO ADMINISTRATIVE AND GEOGRAPHICAL LOCATIONS

To locate a place within the administrative hierarchy (e.g., the prefecture or *chou* 州 and route or *lu* 路 in which a particular subprefecture or *hsien* 縣 lies), consult:

(W) DS706.5.W7 1956
LoC: DS706.5 .W7
Geographical Names in Sung China: An Alphabetical List.
Hope Wright comp.
Paris: École Pratique des Haute Études, 1956. 192 and 9 p.
McMullen #64.

Alphabetical, by Wade-Giles romanization; includes a character index. Gives the coordinates of prefectural seats and the distance (in *li* 里) of subprefectural seats from the prefectural seat. This is based on the "Treatise on Geography" in the *Sung History* and the two Sung-period geographies noted below.

Songdai xingzheng cengji jiansuo
宋代行政層級檢索
(Song Administrative Units Search)
Academia Sinica 中央研究院, Yuanzhi Daxue 元智大學
http://cls.admin.yzu.edu.tw/cm/query/q_area.htm

This is a searchable index; links up to the digital maps in 宋人地理資訊系統 (see VII.A.1).

For a compilation of scholarly notes (culled from past and present research) on "The Treatise on Geography," including the present location of all places listed, see

Song shi dili zhi huishi
宋史地理志匯釋

(Collected Commentaries on "The Treatise on Geography" in *The Song Dynastic History*)
 Guo, Li'an 郭黎安
 Hefei: Anhui jiaoyu chubanshe, 2003. 289 p.

To locate administrative units, bodies of water, mountains, etc. on maps, see the index to:

R3020/0447(6) *Chung-kuo li-shih ti-t'u chi*, Vol. 6, *Sung Liao Chin shih-ch'i*
 LoC: G2306.S1 C55 1982 中國歷史地圖集：宋遼金時期
 (Historical atlas of China: the Sung, Liao, and Chin periods).
 T'an Ch'i-hsiang 譚其驤, gen. ed.
 Shanghai: Ti-t'u ch'u-pan, 1982. 115 p.

See also the online index at <http://www.fas.harvard.edu/~chgis/>

VII.C. INDEXES TO SUNG-PERIOD GEOGRAPHIES

Two Northern Sung geographies have been indexed. For the earlier, the 200-chüan *T'ai-p'ing huan-yü chi* (980), see:

Ref(C) DS706.5.Y83 1963x Index *T'ai-p'ing huan-yü chi so-yin*
 LoC: DS706.5.Y832 W36 China 太平寰宇記索引
 (Index to the *Comprehensive Geography of the T'ai-p'ing [hsing-kuo] period*).
 Wang Hui 王恢 comp.
 Taipei: Wen-hai ch'u-pan she, 1975. 1022 and 22 p.

A second geography, the 10-chüan *Yuan-feng chiu-yü chih*, was presented in 1080. The 1984 punctuated, critical edition includes an index.

3025/1144b(1-2) *Yuan-feng chiu-yü chih*
 LoC: DS706.5.W33 1984 China 元豐九域志
 (Comprehensive geography of the Yuan-feng period).
 Wang Ts'un 王存
 Wang Wen-ch'u 王文楚 and Wei Sung-shan 魏嵩山 comp.
 Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1984. 2 volumes. Index: 281 p.

This edition supersedes the 1784 edition, reprinted in 1976, for which the following index should be consulted:

Genpō kyūikishi, fu sakuin
 元豐九域志附索引
 [*Yuan-feng chiu-yü chih fu so-yin*]
 (Index to the *Comprehensive geography of the Yuan-feng period*).
 Shimai Kazuyasu 居一康 comp.
 Kyoto: Chūbun shuppansha, 1976. Index: 72 p.

The private cultural geography of Southern Sung China, the *Yü-ti chi-sheng* of ca. 1221, was based on earlier geographies, gazetteers, and personal experience. The reprinted edition includes indexes to place names, personal names, and stone inscriptions according to the four-corner system. There is a stroke-count index.

3025/1173b *Yü-ti chi-sheng*
 LoC: DS706.5.W28 1991 China 輿地紀勝
 (Records of famous places).
 Wang Hsiang-chih 王象之 comp.
 Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1992. 8 volumes.

There is also an index to a similar but shorter work by Chu Mu 祝穆

"*Fang-yü sheng-lan ti-ming so-yin*"
 方輿勝覽地名索引
 (Place-name index to the *Fang-yü sheng-lan*).
 In *Sung-pen* 宋本 *Fang-yü sheng-lan*.
 Shanghai: Shanghai ku-chi, 1991. Vol. 4, pp. 259-342.

For converting Sung-period place names into their modern approximations and equivalents, turn to the historical atlas *Chung-kuo li-shih ti-t'u chi* and standard geographical dictionaries.

Yudi guang ji
 輿地廣記
 (Broad Description of the World)
 Ouyang Min 歐陽忞; annotated by Li Yongxian 李勇先, and Wang Xiaohong 王小紅
 Song Yuan dilizhi congkan 宋元地理志叢刊
 Chengdu: Sichuan daxue chubanshe, 2003.

This edition includes place and personal name indexes. Also includes a map based on the geographical information contained in this twelfth-century work.

VII.D. PLACE-NAME INDEXES TO OTHER WORKS

For waterways as given in the "Treatise on Rivers and Canals" of the *Sung History*, see:

J8731/2230
 LoC: DS751 .T64 1979 Suppl.
Sō shi kakyoshi sakuin
 宋史河渠志索引
 [*Sung-shih ho-ch'ü chih so-yin*]
 (Index to the Treatise on rivers and canals in the *Sung History*).
 Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
 Tokyo: Shōshin shobō, 1979. 216 p.

For place-names mentioned in the fiscal policy section of The Collected Status of the Song Dynasty, see:

Sō kaiyō shūkō Shokukō sakuin chimei hen
 宋會要輯稿食貨索引 地名篇
 (Index to the fiscal policy section in *The Collected Statutes of the Song Dynasty--Place Names*).
 Tōkyō: Tōyō bunko, 2005. 179p.
 [Included in *Sōdai no keizai seisaku oyabi kanren suru sho seisaku no sōgōteki kenkyū* 宋代の經濟政策おやあび関連する諸政策の総合的研究, ed. Shiba Yoshinobu 斯波義信, Tōkyō: Tōyō bunko, 2005.]

The main index is arranged alphabetically in Japanese. There is a stroke-order index.

Note the place-name index to Ssu-ma Kuang's *Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Government* (*Tzu-chih t'ung-chien*), although this chronological history stops in A.D. 959.

J2512/1279.2

Shiji tsugan Kochū chimei sakuin

資治通鑑胡註地名索引

[*Tzu-chih t'ung-chien Hu-chu ti-ming so-yin*](Place-name index to Hu [San-hsing]'s commentary on the *Tzu-chih t'ung-chien*).

Araki Toshikazu 荒木敏一 and Yoneda Kenjirō 米田賢次郎 comp.

Kyoto: Kyōtodaigaku Jinbun kagaku kenkyūjo, 1967. 351 p. McMullen #93.

Xu Zizhi tongjian changbian--diming suoyin

續資治通鑑長編--地名索引

(A Place-Name Index to *Xu Zizhi tongjian changbian*)

Academia Sinica 中央研究院, Yuanzhi Daxue 元智大學

http://cls.admin.yzu.edu.tw/Tong/bin/place_index.asp

This table indexes place names in 續資治通鑑長編 and links up to the digital maps 宋人地理資訊系統 (see VII.A.1).

The following merely lists in sequence the place names in the text with their Ch'ing equivalents.

2512/1279.23

Tzu-chih t'ung-chien ti-li chin-shih

資治通鑑地理今釋

(Modern identification of geographical names in the *Tzu-chih t'ung-chien*).

Wu Hsi-tsai 吳熙載 comp.

N.p. Chiang-su shu-chū, 1882; rpt. Taipei: Hsin-hsing shu-chū, 1959. 109 p.

McMullen #91.

VII.E. MODERN GEOGRAPHICAL STUDIES AND SERIES

The following study of Sung walled cities, from capitals down to subprefectures, includes a chart showing the dimensions and other features of the walls and moats of about 150 such cities, noting their administrative rank.

J2404/5282

LoC: DS511 .N289

"Sōdai no toshi jōkaku"

宋代の都市城郭

(The walls of Sung cities).

Shiba Yoshinobu 斯波義信

In *Nakashima Satoshi sensei koki kinen ronshū*

中島敏先生古稀記念論集

(Essays in honor of Nakashima Satoshi).

Vol. 2. Tokyo: Kyūko shoin, 1981, pp. 289-318.

The following is a study of transportation routes in the T'ang and Sung periods:

J4488/5234

Tō Sō jidai no kōtsū to chishi chizu no kenkyū

唐宋時代の交通と地誌地圖の研究

(Studies of local gazetteers, maps, and transportation routes in T'ang and Sung)

Aoyama Sadao 青山定雄

Tokyo: Yoshikawa kōbunkan, 1963. 617 and 18 p.

Series (congkan)

Song Yuan difangzhi congshu; Song Yuan difangzhi congshu

xubian

宋元地方志叢書; 宋元地方志叢書續編

(Song Yuan Local Gazetteers Series; Song Yuan Local Gazetteers Series Continued)

Zhongguo dizhi yanjiuhui 中國地志研究會

Taibei: Dahua shuju 大化書局, 1980, 1990.

Song Yuan fangzhi congkan

宋元方志叢刊

(Song Yuan Local Gazetteers Series)

Beijing: Zhonghua shuju 中華書局, 1990.

Song Yuan dilizhi congkan

宋元地理志叢刊

(Song Yuan Geographical Compendia Series)

Chengdu : Sichuan daxue chubanshe 四川大學出版社, 2003-

Until now three titles have been published. Each title is punctuated and comes with an elaborate introduction. Indexes are either included or are planned.

VIII. Resources on the Government

VIII.A. The Structure of Government

Note the existence of the following charts depicting the structure of the central government prior to and upon the Yuan-feng period restructuring of the central bureaucracy.

"Chart I: The Sung Central Government until about 1080."

"Chart II: The Sung Central Government after about 1080."

E. A. Kracke, Jr.

Manuel de l'histoire des Song circular, 1957.

For further details, see Yves Hervouet, *A Sung Bibliography*, xiii.

For an overview of the structure of Sung government, see:

(W) Ref JQ1512.Z13 T574 1985

LoC: JQ1512.Z13 T574 1985

A Dictionary of Official Titles in Imperial China.

Charles O. Hucker.

Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1985. Pp. 40-52.

Note also the discussion of the structure of civil government in:

(W) JQ1512.K7

LoC: JQ1512 .K7

Civil Service in Early Sung China, 960-1067

E. A. Kracke, Jr.

Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1953, pp. 28-53,

and in Miyazaki Ichisada's 宮崎市定 57-page introduction to

J2404/5351(11)

2665 7171.2

Sōshi shokkanshi sakuin

宋史職官志索引

(Index to the Treatise on the bureaucracy in the *Sung history*).

Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.

Kyoto: Kyōto daigaku bungakubu Tōyōshi kenkyūkai, 1963.

McMullen #66.

VIII.B. Bureaucratic Ranks

The following article discusses the complex method of assigning rank and office. It includes a chart, in Chinese, giving the rank titles for civil and military officials before and after the system was revised; it also indicates normal career routes through the ranks.

(W) DS12.A45 "Civil and Military Titles in Sung: The *Chi-lu-kuan* System."
 LoC: DS12 .A45 Umehara Kaoru.
Acta Asiatica 50 (1986): 1-30.

Note also the introduction to:

WID-LC JQ1512.Z1 K7 1978 *Translation of Sung Civil Service Titles.*
 LoC: JQ1512.Z1 K7 1978 E. A. Kracke, Jr.
 Paris: École Pratique des Hautes Études, 1957.
 Second rev. ed. San Francisco: Chinese Materials Center, 1978. 48 p.

and the translation of the protocol list of 1038 in the aforementioned Kracke, *Civil Service in Early Sung China, 960-1067*, pp. 229-235.

VIII.C. Incumbents in Certain Offices

The political chronologies for Northern and Southern Sung cited above record appointments to high central and provincial offices. Here lists of incumbents in particular offices are noted.

Central Government

For a systematic and comprehensive chronological list of incumbents in the major court and capital offices, see:

(C) JQ1512 .L525 2003x *Songdai jingchao guan tong kao*
 宋代京朝官通考
 (Comprehensive Survey of Song Dynasty Capital and Court Officials).
 Li Zhiliang 李之亮.
 Chengdu : Ba Shu shu she, 2003.
 5 vols.

This list covers councilors and vice-councilors, the Bureau of Military Affairs, the State Finance Commission, the Hanlin Academy, the Eastern Palace, the Herds Office, the Remonstrance Bureau, the Secretariat, the Chancellery, the Department of State Affairs (with the Six Boards), the Censorate, the Imperial Library, the Palace Administration, and the various Courts and Directorates (*si jian*) (such as the Directorate of Education).

The Appendix includes a name index organized by pinyin transliteration with finding aids by the four-corner system and by stroke number. There is also a table of variant names of all positions listed.

For membership on the **Council of State** for the entire Sung dynasty, including documents of appointment and some biographical and anecdotal information, see the punctuated, critical edition of Hsu Tzu-ming's 徐自明 *Sung tsai-fu pien-nien lu* 宋宰輔編年錄 and Lü Pang-yao's 呂邦耀 *Hsu Sung tsai-fu pien-nien lu* 續宋宰輔編年錄. It includes a name index.

4695.5/2926.1

Sung tsai-fu pien-nien lu chiao-pu

LoC: DS751.H743 W36 1986 China 宋宰輔編年錄校補
(Chronology of Sung chief and assisting councilors, revised).
Wang Jui-lai 王瑞來
Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1986. 72, 4, 1, 2, 1848, 28 p.

The membership for the years 1041 through 1125 is also given in chart form in:

J4616/1131.2 *Ō Anseki jiten*
王安石事典
(Encyclopedia of Wang An-shih).
Higashi Ichio 東一夫.
Tokyo: Kokusho kankōkai, 1980, pp. 211-220.

The *Sung History* includes a table of appointments to the Council of State.

For extensive corrections to previous lists, see

Song zaixiang biao xin bian
宋宰相表新編
(Tables of Song Councilors--Newly Compiled).
Liang, Tianxi 梁天錫.
Taipei: Guoli bianyiguan, 1996.

This title replaces the same author's *Song shi zaifu biao* 宋史宰輔表.

Regional and Local Government

Route level officers are listed in:

(C) JS7351.A3 L529 2003 *Songdai lu fen zhangguan tong kao*
宋代路分长官通考
(Comprehensive Survey of Top-Ranking Route Officials during the Song Period).
Li Zhiliang 李之亮.
Chengdu : Ba Shu shu she, 2003.
3 vols.

This is a chronological overview of incumbents in senior positions in route level offices. The chronological list of incumbents is organized by office and then by route name. It covers the Song period only, not Jin or Yuan.

Prefects are listed chronologically by prefecture in the series:

(C) DS751.3 .L53 2001x *Songdai junshou tongkao*
宋代郡守通考
(Comprehensive Survey of Prefects during the Song Period).
Li Zhiliang 李之亮.
Chengdu : Ba Shu shu she, 2001.
10 vols.

The editor, Li Zhiliang, compiled the chronologies for each Song prefecture on the basis of local gazetteers,

The Song Dynastic History, Song Collected Statutes, private histories, administrative encyclopedias, collections of individual writers, and inscriptions. The chronologies are covered in nine volumes, based on the route to which the prefecture belonged. Prefectures lost to the Jin Empire are only covered up to the year of their annexation by Jin forces.

It includes the following titles:

Song liang Jiang junshou yiti kao

宋两江郡守易替考

(Survey of Prefects in Jiangnan East and Jiangnan West during the Song Period)

Song liang Guang da jun shouchen yiti kao

宋兩广大郡守臣易替考

(Survey of Prefects in Guangnan East and Guangnan West during the Song Period)

Song liang Hu da jun shouchen yiti kao

宋两湖大郡守臣易替考

(Survey of Prefects in Jinghu East and Jinghu West during the Song Period)

Song Hebei Hedong da jun shouchen yiti kao

宋河北河东大郡守臣易替考

(Survey of Prefects in Hebei and Hedong during the Song Period)

Song Chuan Shan da jun shouchen yiti kao

宋川陕大郡守臣易替考

(Survey of Prefects in the Sichuan Shaanxi Region during the Song Period)

Song liang Huai da jun shouchen yiti kao

宋两淮大郡守臣易替考

(Survey of Prefects in Huainan East and Huainan West during the Song Period)

Bei Song jingshi ji dong xi lu da jun shouchen kao

北宋京师及东西路大郡守臣考

(Survey of Prefects in the Capital and Jingdong East and Jingdong West during the Northern Song Period)

Song liang Zhe lu junshou nianbiao

宋两浙路郡守年表

(Chronology of Prefectureships in Zhedong and Zhexi during the Song Period)

Song Fujian lu junshou nianbiao

宋福建路郡守年表

(Chronology of Prefectureships in Fujian during the Song Period)

This series includes a name index:

(C) DS751.3 .L53 2001x vol.10

Songdai junshou tongkao renming suoyin

宋代郡守通考人名索引

(Name Index to Comprehensive Survey of Prefects during the Song Period).

Li Zhiliang 李之亮.

Chengdu : Ba Shu shu she, 2001.

Military Offices

For incumbents in military intendancies (the Northern Sung *ching-lueh an-fu shih* 經略安撫使 and Southern Sung *chih-chih shih* 置制使 or *chih-fu shih*) chronologically by place, see:

<p>JS7354.A4 LoC: JS7354 .A4 1984 China</p>	<p><i>Pei-Sung ching-fu nien-piao</i> 北宋經撫年表 (Chronological tables of Northern Sung military intendants). Nan-Sung chih-fu nien-piao 南宋制撫年表 (Chronological tables of Southern Sung military intendants). Wu T'ing-hsieh 吳廷燮 Punctuated and emended by Chang Ch'en-shih 張忱石 Peking: Chung-hua shu-chü, 1984. 594 p.</p>
---	--

This work is commonly available in the *Erh-shih-wu shih*

pu-pien 二十五史補編 (Shanghai: K'ai-ming shu-tien, 1937, and later

reprints). Only the edition listed above includes a name index.

For the Five Dynasties period, see:

<p>J2640/1786 LoC: DS749.62 .K87 1988 Japan</p>	<p><i>Godai Sōsho hanchin nenpyō</i> 五代宋初藩鎮年表 (Chronology of military commands in the Five Dynasties and early Sung). Kurihara Masuo 栗原益男 Tokyo: Tōkyōtō shuppan. 1988. 713 p.</p>
---	--

VIII.D. Offices and Official Titles

For brief overviews of the Sung official system, see the studies by E. A. Kracke, Jr., and Miyazaki Ichisada and the introduction to Charles O. Hucker's *Dictionary* below. Comprehensive indexes that include official titles will be found in Section VI.

The system of official titles in Sung was made up of several different schedules of titles for denoting rank; these were in turn distinct from the names of the particular functions to which officials were assigned. This is further complicated by the Sung use of T'ang-period functional titles as rank titles and by several Northern Sung reforms of the schedules of titles. The best introduction to this complicated system is:

<p>(W) DS12.A45 LoC: DS12 .A45</p>	<p>"Civil and Military Titles in Sung: The <i>Chi-lu-kuan</i> System." Umehara Kaoru. <i>Acta Asiatica</i> 50 (1986): 1-30.</p>
--	---

This article includes a chart, in Chinese, giving the rank titles for civil and military officials before and after the system was revised; it also traces normal career routes through the ranks. The index to Umehara's book, a collection of studies on the Sung official system, includes the offices and titles discussed in the book.

<p>J2404/5351(37) LoC: JQ1512.Z1 U44 1985 Japan</p>	<p><i>Sōdai kanryōseido kenkyū</i> 宋代官僚制度研究 (Studies of the Sung bureaucracy). Umehara Kaoru 梅原郁 Kyoto: Dōhōsha, 1985. 622 and 21 p.</p>
---	--

For English translations of official titles with brief explanations of changes in function through the ages, see:

(W) Ref JQ1512.Z13 T574 1985 *A Dictionary of Official Titles in Imperial China.*
LoC: JQ1512.Z13 T574 1985 Charles O. Hucker.
Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1985. 676 p.

Hucker's translations of titles are becoming standard. They supersede Kracke's translations as given in:

(Widener)JQ1512.Z1 K7 1978 *Translation of Sung Civil Service Titles.*
LoC: JQ1512.Z1 K7 1978 E. A. Kracke, Jr.
Paris: École Pratique des Hautes Études, 1957.
Rev. ed., San Francisco: Chinese Materials Center, 1978. 35 [21] p.

The most comprehensive index to Song official titles is:

(C) JQ1512.Z1 K864 1997 *Songdai guanzhi cidian*
宋代官制辞典
(A Dictionary of Song Dynasty Government)
Gong Yanming 龔延明
Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1997. 49, 88, 800 p.

See [IX.A.2](#) for a further description.

The most comprehensive dictionary in a European language, listing 4410 with translations into French, references to sources (primarily the "Treatise on the Bureaucracy" of the *Sung shih*), and some indication of where an office was located within the bureaucracy, is:

(W) JQ1512.Z1 C454 *Les fonctionnaires des Song: Index des titres*
LoC: JQ1512.Z1 C454 Chang Fu-jui comp.
Paris: École Pratique des Hautes Études, 1962. 579 p.
McMullen #65.

Saeki Tomi's indexes to various treatises of the *Sung History*, noted in Section VI above, also index official titles. In particular note the index to the "Treatise on Bureaucracy":

J2404/5351(11) *Sōshi shokkanshi sakuin*
2665/7171.2 宋史職官志索引
[*Sung-shih chih-kuan-chih so-yin*]
(Index to the Treatise on bureaucracy in the *Sung History*).
Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.
Kyoto: Tōyōshi kenkyūkai, 1963. 63, 25, and 423 p.
McMullen #66.

There are several indexes to the section on fiscal policy in the *Sung hui yao*. The following indexes bureaucratic and institutional titles and terms. Arranged by Japanese pronunciation; there is a stroke-count index.

J 4353 3810 (3) *Sō kaiyō shūkō: shokka sakuin: shokkan hen*
宋會要輯稿：食貨索引：職官編
[*Sung hui-yao chi-kaō: shih-huo so-yin: chih-kuan pien*]
(Index to bureaucratic terms in the fiscal policy section of the *Sung hui-yao*)
Tokyo: Tōyō bunko, 1995. 5, 328 p.

A convenient source for descriptions of major offices is the Sung volume of the *Chung-kuo li-shih ta-tz'u-tien*,

previously noted, which also explains some of the informal terms used to refer to major offices. The surviving fragments of Wang I-chih's 王益之 late-twelfth century work on the Sung bureaucracy and its historical origins, the [*Li-tai*] *Chih-yuan ts'o-yao*, has also been indexed:

J4681/2230

Shokugen satsuyō sakuin

職源撮要索引

[*Chih-yuan ts'o-yao so-yin*]

(Index to the *General history of government systems [through the ages]*).

Saeki Tomi 佐伯富 comp.

Kyoto: Tōyōshi kenkyūkai, 1956. 30 p.

McMullen #92.

For **abbreviated and alternative names for offices**, see:

2665/4347(1)

"Sung-tai chih-kuan chien-ch'eng pieh-ming hui-shih-hsuan"

宋代職官簡稱、別名匯釋選

(Abbreviated and alternative names for selected offices in the Sung dynasty).

Kung Yen-ming 龔延明

Sung-shih yen-chiu chi-k'an 宋史研究集刊 (浙江古籍) 1

(1986): 107-161.

IX. Dictionaries and Glossaries

Note: useful for determining the meaning and usage of various terms are the several indexes that cover terms as well as proper nouns. These are listed in Section VI above. Refer also to the historical dictionaries and encyclopedias listed in Part IV.A.

IX.A. MODERN DICTIONARIES AND GLOSSARIES

IX.A.1. General Language

The following is the most comprehensive dictionary to date of Sung literary usages and colloquialisms as found in literary works, records of speech, and other texts. Arranged by stroke count.

Ref (C) PL1497.L786 1985x

Sung Yuan yü-yen tz'u-tien

宋元語言辭典

(Dictionary of Sung and Yuan language).

Lung Ch'ien-an 龍潛庵 comp.

Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu ch'u-pan-she, 1985. 1023 p.

(C) PL1079 .S85 1997

Song yuyan cidian

宋語言詞典

(A Dictionary of Song Dynasty Language)

Yuan Bin 袁賓

Shanghai: Shanghai jiaoyu chubanshe, 1997. 2, 56, 376 p.

Contains 4100+ entries arranged by pinyin. There is an index by stroke order at the end, as well as a bibliography listing all the sources quoted in the dictionary. This dictionary is more inclusive than *Sung Yuan yü-yen tz'u-tien*. It covers, for example, yulu, historical sources, biji, Buddhist sources. More controversially, it also cites from later sources quoting Song usage. The Song volume is part of a series of three, with two other volumes on Tang-Wudai language by Jiang Jiansheng and Yuan language by Li Chongxing.

We note here the completion of the most extensive and authoritative dictionary of written Chinese:

Ref(C) PL1420.H3494 1986 *Han-yü ta-tz'u-tien*
 漢語大辭典
 (Great dictionary of the Chinese language).
 Hong Kong: San-lien shu-chü, 1986-1994. 12 & 1 vols.

For vernacular terms after the late T'ang, see:

5175/0203 *Chin-tai Han-yü tz'u-tien*
 LoC: PL1420 .C516 1992 China 近代漢語辭典
 (Dictionary of early-modern and modern Chinese language).
 Kao Wen-ta 高文達 general comp.
 Peking: Hsin-hua shu-tien, 1992. 1034 p.

Includes definitions, examples of usages, variations, and related items.

IX.A.2. Institutional Terms and Usage

For institutional terms and their usage, the most comprehensive modern historical dictionary is:

(C) JQ1512.Z1 K864 1997 *Songdai guanzhi cidian*
 宋代官制辭典
 (A Dictionary of Song Dynasty Government)
 Gong Yanming 龔延明
 Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1997. 49, 88, 800 p.

This dictionary covers official titles (11000 entries) and administrative jargon (600 entries). It is organized according to the bureaucratic hierarchy. There is a comprehensive index in the back. A survey of the Song administration (pp. 1-49) comes in front. The tables are listed on p. 88. Appendices include: 1) a bibliography of sources; 2) indexes by stroke order for each of the two parts of the dictionary.

Also useful, but less complete is:

R2457/2325(5) *Chung-kuo li-shih ta-tz'u-tien: Sung shih*
 中國歷史大辭典：宋史
 (Great dictionary of Chinese history: Sung history).
 Teng Kuang-ming 鄧廣銘 and Ch'eng Ying-liu 程應鏐 ed.
 Shanghai: Shang-hai tz'u-shu ch'u-pan-she, 1984. 71, 543 p.

For terms pertaining to Chinese social and economic history, but not exclusively to the Sung period, see:

(J) HC427.H67 1966x *Chūgoku shakai keizai shi goi*
 LoC: H49 .H66 (Orien Japan) 中國社會經濟史語彙
 (Vocabulary for Chinese social and economic history).
 Hoshi Ayao 星斌夫
 2 vols. Tokyo: Tōyōbunko, 1966 and 1975. 425 and 168 p.

Volume 2 is a supplement to the first volume. Both are organized by Japanese pronunciation and include a stroke-count index.

Also for terms pertaining to Chinese economic history, but not exclusively to the Sung period, see:

4352/4824 *Chung-kuo ching-chi-shih tz'u-tien*
 中國經濟史辭典
 (Dictionary of Chinese economic history).
 Chao Te-hsin 趙德馨 comp.
 Wuhan: Hu-pei tz'u-shu ch'u-pan-she, 1990. 948p.

This includes 5470 historical items. There is a classified index by period and then by subject. There is a stroke-count index. For Sung economic history, see the section by Ko Chin-fang 葛金芳 and Ku Jung 顧容, pp. 330-431.

For a variety of terms relevant to Wang An-shih's New Policies regime, see the glossary in:

J4616/1131.2 *Ō Anseki jiten*
 王安石事典
 (Encyclopedia of Wang An-shih).
 Higashi Ichio 東一夫
 Tokyo: Kokusho kankōkai, 1980, pp. 279-342.

IX.A.3. Documentary Terms and Usage

For definitions and translations of names for the various kinds of documents and informal literary writings appearing in literary collections, with references to examples, see:

(W) DS751.S83 "A Guide to Documentary Sources of Middle Period Chinese
 LoC: DS751 .S83 History:
 Documentary Forms Contained in the Collected Papers (*wen-chi*) of
 Twenty-one T'ang and Sung Writers."
 Robert M. Hartwell.
Bulletin of Sung-Yuan Studies 18 (1986): 133-182.

IX.A.4. Literature

For terms relating to *tz'u* poetry, see the glossary in:

5577/4089 *Sung tz'u chien-shang tz'u-tien*
 宋詞鑒賞辭典
 (Guide to Sung *tz'u* poetry).
 Ho Hsin-hui 賀新輝 ed.
 Peking: Pei-ching Yen-shan ch'u-pan-she, 1987, pp. 1288-1297,

and

(C) PL2336.T4 1990 *T'ang Sung tz'u pai-k'o ta-tz'u-tien*
 LoC: PL2336 .T4 1990 China 唐宋詞百科大辭典
 (Encyclopedia of T'ang and Sung *tz'u* poetry)
 Wang Hung 王洪 et al. comp.
 Peking: Hsueh-yuan ch'u-pan-she, 1990. pp. 1-280.

For allusions used in Sung *tz'u* lyrics, see:

5577/8134 *Ch'üan-Sung-tz'u tien-ku k'ao-shih tz'u-tien*
 LoC: PL2343 .C49 1991 China 全宋詞典故考釋辭典
 (Dictionary of allusions used in the *Ch'üan-Sung tz'u*)
 Chin Ch'i-hua 金啟華 general ed.
 Ch'ang-chun: Chi-lin wen-shih ch'u-pan-she, 1991. 1178 p.

and

Ref (C) PL2341.T38 1994x *T'ang Sung tz'u tien-ku ta-tz'u-tien.*
 LoC: PL1497 .T3565 1994 China 唐宋詞典故大辭典
 (Great dictionary of allusions in T'ang and Sung *tz'u* lyrics)
 Ko Ch'eng-min 葛成民, Hsieh Ya-fei 謝亞非, et al.
 N.p: Kuang-hsi jen-min, 1994. 1500 p.

Each item gives origin (典源), explanation (釋義), and examples (用例). Items are arranged in stroke count order.

For terms appearing in 30 T'ang and 80 Sung **literati miscellanies**, see:

5209/1113

T'ang Sung pi-chi yü-tz'u hui-shih

唐宋筆記語辭匯釋

(Glossary of terms in T'ang and Sung miscellanies).

Wang Ying 王瑛

Peking: Chung-hua shu-tien, 1990. 257 p. Revised ed., 2001.

Items are ordered by pronunciation (*p'in-yin* romanization). There is a stroke-count index. The author defines each term, explains its grammatical function, and gives examples.

IX.A.5. Religious and Intellectual Life

J1237/7650

LoC: B128.C53 Z85 1988 Japan

Shushi gorui kōgo goi sakuin

朱子語類口語彙索引

[*Chu-tzu yü-lei "k'ou-yü yü-hui" so-yin*]

(Index to the "vocabulary of colloquialisms" in the *Chu-tzu yü-lei*).

Shiomi Kunihiko 鹽見邦彦 comp.

Tokyo: Chūbun shuppansha, 1988. 240 p.

This is an index to the colloquial language and vocabulary used in the *Classified Conversations* of Chu Hsi.

(W) PL2464.Z9 N86

2003x

A Companion to Yi Jing Numerology and Cosmology: Chinese Studies of Images and Numbers from Han (202 BCE-220 CE) to Song (960-1279 CE)

Bent Nielsen

London: RoutledgeCurzon, 2003. xix, 391.

For **Ch'an** Buddhist terminology, see the previously cited:

Ref (J) BQ9259.Z45

LoC: BQ9259 .Z45

Zengaku daijiten.

禪學大辭典

(Great dictionary of Ch'an Buddhism)

Komazawa daigaku nai Zengaku daijiten hensanjo

駒澤大學内禪學大辭典編纂所 comp.

Tokyo: Daishūkan shoten, 1978. 3 vols.

New ed.: *Shinpan Zengaku daijiten*

新版禪學大辭典

Zengaku daijiten hensanjo 禪學大辭典編纂所

Tokyo: Daishūkan shoten, 1985.

IX.B. SUNG-PERIOD DICTIONARIES AND ANNOTATED GLOSSARIES

IX.B.1. Indexed Dictionaries

Of the several dictionaries compiled or revised during Sung one of the most important, the *Kuang-yun*, a 5-*chüan* rhyme dictionary from 1011 with over 26,000 characters, has been indexed; see:

5125/7948g

Chiao-cheng Sung-pen Kuang-yun, fu so-yin
校正宋本廣韻附索引
(Collated Sung edition of the *Expanded rhymes*, with index).
Ch'en P'eng-nien 陳彭年 (961-1017) et al.
Corrected by I-wen yin-shu-kuan 藝文印書館
Taipei: I-wen yin-shu-kuan, 1967.

This supersedes

5123/7948.5

Kōin sakuin.
廣韻索引
[*Kuang-yun so-yin*]
(Index to the *Kuang-yin*).
Sakai Ken'ichi 井見一 et al. comp.
Tokyo: Tōkyō kyōiku daigaku Tōyō bungaku kenkyūshitsu
Chūgoku bunka kenkyū kai, 1953.
McMullen #267.

The *fan-ch'ieh* spellings in the *Kuang-yun* have been indexed in:

LoC: PL1201.K853 H37 1966 Japan

Kōin hansetsu sakuin
廣韻反切索引
[*Kuang-yun fan-ch'ieh so-yin*]
(Index to the *fan-ch'ieh* spellings in the *Kuang-yun*).
Harada Taneshige 原田種成 comp.
Tokyo: Mukyūkai Tōyō bunka kenkyūjo, 1966. 85 p.
McMullen #268.

IX.B.2. Glossaries, Encyclopedias and Manuals

Chao Sheng's 趙升 *Ch'ao-yeh lei-yao*, from the thirteenth century in 5 *chüan*, defines terms from many areas of **official life**. It is indexed by:

Ch'ao-yeh lei-yao yin-te
朝野類要引得
(Index to the *Important affairs in state and society*).
Stephen Yu.
San Francisco: Chinese Materials Center, 1974. 50 p.

For a Japanese translation of this work, see:

Chōya ruiyō yakuchū
朝野類要訳注
(Annotated translation of *The important affairs in state and society, classified*).
Chōya ruiyō kenkyūhan 朝野類要研究班
Tōkyō: Tōyō bunko, 2005. 127p.
[Included in *Sōdai no keizai seisaku oyabi kanren suru sho seisaku no sōgōteki kenkyū* 宋代の經濟政策おやあび関連する諸政策の総合的研究, ed. Shiba Yoshinobu 斯波義信, Tōkyō: Tōyō bunko, 2005.]

This title also includes a bibliographical study of *The Important Affairs in State and Society, Classified* by Wang Ruilai 王瑞來.

[*Shan-t'ang hsien-sheng Ch'ün-shu k'ao-so mu-lu*]
 Yoshida Tora 吉田寅 and Tanada Naohiko 棚田直彦 comp.
 Tokyo: Tōkyō kyōiku daigaku bungakubu Tōyōshi kenkyūshitsu
 Ajiashi kenkyūkai, 1957. 63 p.
 McMullen #170.

Their

Kokuchō shoshin sōgi mokuroku hoka
 國朝諸臣奏議目錄他
 [*Kuo-ch'ao chu-ch'en tsou-i mu-lu t'a*]
 (Tables of content for the *Kuo-ch'ao chu-ch'en tsou-i*, etc.).
 Yoshida Tora and Tanada Naohiko comp.
 Tokyo: Tōkyō kyōiku daigaku bungakubu Tōyōshi kenkyūshitsu
 Ajiashi kenkyūkai, 1957. 79 p.
 McMullen #174.

has tables of contents for the following collections and histories:

Chao Ju-yü *Kuo-ch'ao chu-ch'en tsou-i*
 趙汝愚 國朝諸臣奏議

P'eng Po-ch'uan *T'ai-p'ing chih-chi t'ung-lei*
 彭百川 太平治蹟統類

Tseng Kung *Lung-p'ing chi*
 曾鞏 隆平集

Wang Ch'eng *Tung-tu shih-lueh*
 王偁 東都事略

A detailed table of contents for the great Southern Sung encyclopedia, **Wang Ying-lin's** 王應麟 *Yü hai*, is

Gyokkai mokuroku
 玉海目錄
 [*Yü-hai mu-lu*]
 (Table of contents of the *Yü-hai*).
 Yoshida Tora 吉田寅 and Tanada Naohiko 棚田直彦 comp.
 Tokyo: Tōkyō kyōiku daigaku bungakubu Tōyōshi kenkyūshitsu
 Ajiashi kenkyūkai, 1957. 104 p.
 McMullen #171.

The following reprints of old editions of several Sung encyclopedias have tables of contents with page numbers. These are

R9297/0213b *Shih-wu chi-yuan chi-lei*
 LoC: AE2 .K35 1970 (Orien China) 事物紀原集類
 (On the origins of things and affairs, collected by category).
 Kao Ch'eng 高承 (fl. late 11th century).
 1447; rpt. Taipei: Hsin-hsing, 1969. 10 *ch*.

R9297/4972 *Ku-chin yuan-liu chih-lun*
 LoC: DS705 .L48 (Orien China) 古今源流至論
 (Full accounts of origins, past and present).
 Lin Chiung 林駟 (fl. ca. 1215) and Huang Lüweng 黃履翁 (j.
 1232)
 Ming ed., rpt. Taipei: Hsin-hsing, 1970. 2 vols. 30 *ch*.

9297/0420 *Ku-chin ho-pi shih-lei pei-yao*
 LoC: AE3 .H67 1969 (Orien Japan) 古今合璧事類備要
 (Full essentials of affairs ancient and modern).
 Hsieh Wei-hsin 謝維新

Rpt. Taipei: Hsin-hsing shu-chü, 1969. 4 vols. 366 ch.

The following work includes tables of contents for the important documentary collections **Cheng Ch'iao's** 鄭樵 *T'ung chih* and **Ma Tuan-lin's** 馬端臨 *Wen-hsien t'ung-k'ao*:

R9290/43.5
LoC: Z3101 .B8 Japan

Bunken tsūkō goshu sōmoku roku fu Tsūten Tsūshi
文獻通考五種總目錄附通典通志
[*Wen-hsien t'ung-k'ao wu-chung tsung-mu-lu fu T'ung-tien T'ung-chih*]
(Tables of contents to five *Wen-hsien t'ung-k'ao*, plus the *T'ung-tien* and *T'ung-chih*).
Tōyōshi kenkyūkai 東洋史研究會 comp.
Kyōtō: Tōyōshi kenkyūkai, 1954. 113 p.
McMullen #188.

For indexes to Song administrative handbooks, see [VI.B](#).

APPENDIX

Library of Congress Subject Headings Related to Song History

This list facilitates searching by subject in library catalogs using the Library of Congress subject headings.

Note that subject headings are modified and added on a continuous basis. The list is revised periodically according to the updates relevant to East Asian studies selected and posted by Hideyuki Morimoto on the eastlib listserv.

Send additions or comments to Hilde De Weerd (hdeweerd@utk.edu)

This list can be downloaded as an [excel file](#), listing broader, narrower, and variant terms.

Aesthetics, Chinese--960-1644
Architecture--China--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Art, Chinese—Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Art objects, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Bei Song huang ling (China)
Bronze mirrors--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Bronzes, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Buddhism--China--History--960-1644
Calligraphy, Chinese--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Carving (Decorative arts)--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Ceramic pillows--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
China--Civilization--960-1644
China--History--960-1644
China--History, Military--960-1644
China--History--Song dynasty, 960-1279
China--History--Song dynasty, 960-1279--Anecdotes
China--History--Song dynasty, 960-1279--Humor
China--Intellectual life--960-1644
China--Politics and government--960-1279
China--Politics and government--960-1644
China--Social conditions--960-1644
China--Social life and customs--960-1644
Chinese drama--960-1644
Chinese drama--Song dynasty, 960-1279
Chinese essays--Song dynasty, 960-1279
Chinese fiction--960-1644
Chinese fiction--Song dynasty, 960-1279

Chinese literature--960-1644
Chinese literature--Song dynasty, 960-1279
Chinese poetry--960-1644
Chinese poetry--Song dynasty, 960-1279
Chinese prose literature--Song dynasty, 960-1279
Decorative arts--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Diaoyu Cheng, Battle of, Diaoyu Cheng, 1259
Embroidery--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Goldwork--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Huzhou school of painting
Huang Quan school of painting
Illustration of books--China--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Ink painting, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Intaglios--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Jade art objects--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Lacquer and lacquering--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Landscape painting, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Mural painting and decoration, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Northern school of landscape painting
Northern song-tales (Chinese drama)
Northern Song Tombs (China)
Painting, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Philosophy, Chinese--960-1644
Porcelain, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Pottery, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Qingbai ware
Relief (Decorative arts)--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Ru ware
Scrolls, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Sculpture, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Silverwork--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Southern school of landscape painting
Southern song-tales (Chinese drama)
Stone carving--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Stoneware--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Textile design--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Watercolor painting, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Wood-carving--China--History--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Wood-engraving, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Wood sculpture, Chinese--Song-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
Yunjian school of calligraphy
Xu Xi school of painting

.
.